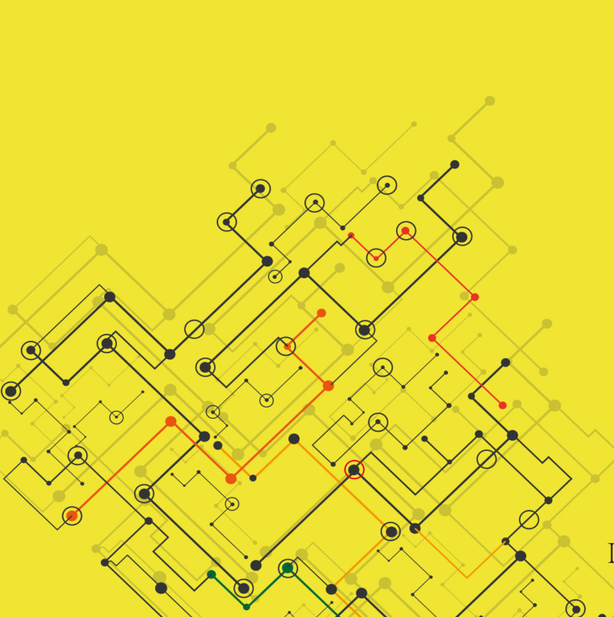




Object-oriented

English Grammar



By Fuzhang Deng

Learn English In A Simple Way



前 言

英语是一门严谨、富有逻辑性的语言，具有系统的语法体系。但传统的英语语法过于零碎、复杂、包括诸多概念如定语、状语、补语、主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句、状语从句等。可以说其大多时候都在告诉我们英语语法“是什么”，而没有说明“为什么”，这使得英语学习者知其然而不知其所以然，进而陷入被动的机械式记忆中，很难全面、准确地掌握英语语法。

为简单、有效地解决这一问题，笔者从全新的视角，用计算机编程中的面向对象思想重新解读了英语语法，创造性地建立了面向对象英语语法（Object-oriented English Grammar）这一全新的语法体系。对象是这一语法体系的核心概念。作者认为世界就是由各种各样的对象组成的，对象有属性和动作，且对象之间是相互联系的。而语言是一种社会现象，其功能就是描述世界上各种各样对象的属性、动作、身份及其与其它对象的关系（从这一角度来说，面向对象语法可以用来分析、学习任何语言），从而达到传达信息的目的。

根据这一核心概念，作者通过分析大量的语法现象发现英语中仅含五种基本简单句型。当两个简单句联系较为紧密时，两者可以复合，如果其中有可推知信息，通常这些信息可以省略。而且英语中的一些信息片段可以被封装起来，形成复合词，从而使句子变得更加简洁（简单句之间的复合、省略以及复合词等在一方面使英语变得简洁，但在另一方面却使英语变得复杂了）。

根据以上概念的理解，我们发现在面向对象英语语法中我们利用关系从句、并列句、复合词、场景动词和隐含信息这些概念可以完美解释传统语法种的多种语法概念（如定语、状语、补语、各种从句等），从而理解这些现象的来龙去脉。

我们可以把英语中五种基本简单句句型形象地比喻成五种不同的积木，通过堆砌、调整这些积木我们就可以构造出各种各样的物件，即复合句。因而从理论上讲，英语句子可以无限长，但都可以被拆解成五种基本简单句。如果我们学会了五种基本简单句、关系从句、并列句、复合词、场景动词、隐含信息及复合省略的规则等就学会了所谓的英语思维，它不仅可以帮助你写出地道简洁的长难句，而且也可以帮助你通过配句型这一方法理解长难句。如果说传统语法是语法现象的收集者的话，那么我们可以说面对象英语语法是语法现象的的分析者，所以两者并无冲突，在以后的学习中，我们可以综合利用这两种语法。

本书的读者对象为中级及以上的英语学习者，如果你是初学者，建议学习之前先补充掌握基础的语法知识。为锻炼学习者的英语思维，部分注解以全英文的形式呈现。在写作的过程中，作者阅读参考了大量英语语法著作及互联网，在此深表谢意。

邓福璋 2022.05.01

致读者

本书及其英文版已取得作品登记证，未经允许严禁用于商业用途，您可以通过微信(18938563818)、QQ(380088832)或邮箱(380088832@qq.com)联系作者探讨学习、获取更新版或纸质版。



也可以加入以下两个 QQ 群一起学习：



目　录

第一章　英语语法概论

1.　简单句

一个完整的简单句都是由两部分组成的：陈述对象+陈述内容。陈述对象一般由名词（或相当于名词的词、短语[①]或句子）担当，称为主语；而陈述内容则说明主语怎么样了，由动词部分+其它部分组成，称为谓语。因此，一个完整的英语句子就是：主语+谓语，如：

- The tree（主语）**is very tall**（谓语）[②]. 这颗树很高。
- He（主语）**likes swimming**（谓语）. 他喜欢游泳。
- The black dog（主语）**is barking in the room**（主语）. 那只黑狗在房间里面叫。

2.　主要词类

1)　名词

名词共有两大类，即专有名词和普通名词。在句中常作主语、宾语或谓语名词。

（a）专有名词：表示具体的人、事物、地点、团体或机构的专有名称的词（通常第一个字母要大写），如：Tom（汤姆），Kunming（昆明），the USA（美国），May（五月）。

（b）普通名词：表示某类人、某类事物、某种物质或抽象概念的名称的词，如：cat（猫），water（水），idea（想法）。

2)　代词

代词是代替名词（或相当于名词的词、短语或句子）的词，用法跟名词一样，在句中常作主语或宾语。如：you（你），I（我），he（他）。

3)　动词

动词是用来描述事物的动作或事物存在的词，是谓语的核心。主要包含行为动词，如：run（跑）， fly（飞），cut（砍），sing（唱），think（想）；及 BE 动词，BE 动词本身没有实际意义。

4)　形容词

形容词是用来描述事物特征的词，如：big（大的），red（红色的），medical （医学的），sheer（十足的），interesting（使人感兴趣的），confused（困惑的），hard-working（勤劳的）。

5)　副词

副词是给动词、形容词、另一副词或整个句子增加地点、时间、环境、方式、原因、程度等信息的词，如：very（非常），rapidly（快速地），happily（高兴地）。根据其所修饰的部分，副词可能出现在句子的任何位置。常由形容词加-ly 构成。

6)　介词

---

① Phrase: a group of words used to form part of a sentence. Examples:
the tree, the back dog (noun phrase); very tall, most beautiful (adjective phrase); is, is barking, can swim (verb phrase); on the table, by the window (prepositional phrase).

② A written sentence begins with a capital letter and ends with a full stop, a question mark or an exclamation mark.

介词是用来描述两个事物[①]之间静态的关系的词（包含空间、时间和逻辑关系三种）如：

- The computer is **on** the desk. 电脑在桌子上。*空间关系。
- The ball is **under** the table. 球在桌子下。*空间关系。
- **After** the war many soldiers stayed in France. 战后，很多士兵留在了法国。 *事件对象(Many soldiers stayed in France.)与 the war 之间的时间关系。
- The new road should be completed **before** the end of the year. 今年年底前，这条新路应该可以完工。*事件对象(The new road should be completed.)与 the end of the year 之间的时间关系。
- He jumped **for** joy. 他高兴地跳了起来。*结果事件对象(He jumped.)与原因对象 joy (reason)之间的逻辑关系。
- The handle **of** the umbrella is small. 这把伞的伞柄很小。*of 描述逻辑关系，指出 the handle 属于 the umbrella。

7) 冠词

冠词本身不能独立使用，只能放在名词前帮助说明名词所指的人或事物。冠词有两种，一种是不定冠词 a/an（a 用于辅音前，an 用于元音前），一种是定冠词 the。通常来说，不定冠词表泛指，定冠词表特指。如：

- A boy and a girl were sitting on a bench. The boy was smiling but the girl looked angry. 一个男孩和一个女孩坐在长凳上。那男孩在微笑，那女孩看起来在生气。
- I ordered a pizza and salad. The pizza was nice but the salad was disgusting. 我点了一份披萨和一份沙拉。披萨很好，但沙拉令人恶心。

8) 连词

连词是用来连接词、短语或句子的词，在面向对象英语语法中，只有 and 和 or 被看作是连词，如：

- He was tall, dark and handsome. 他又高又黑，非常帅气。
- Jim plays the piano and sings folk songs. 吉姆会谈钢琴，还会唱民歌。
- He didn't speak to anyone and nobody spoke to him. 他没有跟任何人说话，也没人跟他说话。
- Is the baby a boy or a girl?[②] 这个婴儿是男孩琮是女孩？
- Is it green or blue?[③] 它是绿色的还是蓝色的？

3. 五种基本简单句型

1) **主语**（名词、代词或相当于名词的短语或句子[④]） + **谓语动词**（不及物动词[⑤]）*描述事物的动词，如:

- She runs. 她奔跑。
- The birds sing. 鸟儿鸣叫。
- The baby cried. 那个婴儿哭喊。

2) **主语**（名词、代词或相当于名词的短语或句子） + **谓语动词**（及物动词[⑥]）+ **宾语**（名词、代词或相当于名词的短语或句子） *描述主语事物的动作及其与宾语事物之间的动态关系，如：

---

① *Things* is in a broad sense here, meaning everything (concrete or abstract) in the world, people,animals, places, actions and events included.

② We can use *and* or *or* to connect words of the same part of a sentence even if they are of different kinds. Examples: *The book has become famous and a best-seller; We can meet here or in town; The hotel was quiet and well back from the road.*

③ There is also a small class of words called “interjections”, including *oh*, *ah* and *mhm*.

④ “TO DO”, “DOING” or a noun clause.

⑤ An intransitive verb cannot take an object.

⑥ A transitive verb needs to take an object. A verb can be intransitive in one meaning and transitive in another. For example: *He runs his own business.* ****Run*** is transitive when it means ***manage***.

➢ Jim hits the table. 吉姆击打桌子。
➢ He cuts the apple. 他切苹果。
➢ I read the book. 我读书。

3) **主语**（名词、代词或相当于名词的短语或句子） + **谓语动词**（BE）+ **谓语形容词**（形容词） *描述事物的特征，如:
➢ I am fat. 我很胖。
➢ Tom is tall. 汤姆很高。
➢ He is fast. 他很快。

4) **主语**（名词、代词或相当于名词的短语或句子）+ **谓语动词**（BE） + **谓语名词**（名词） *描述事物的身份，如:
➢ I am a teacher. 我是老师。
➢ He is a student. 他是学生。
➢ They are workers. 他们是工人。

5) **主语**（名词、代词或相当于名词的短语或句子）+ **谓语动词**（BE）+ **介词** + **宾语**（名词、代词或相当于名词的短语或句子）[①] *描述主语事物与宾语事物之间的静态关系，如：
➢ I am in the room. 我在房间里。
➢ The cup is on the table. 杯子在桌子上。
➢ The lamp is over the computer. 灯在电脑的上方。

4. 陈述句和疑问句

1) 陈述句
用以陈述事实的句子（一般以句号结尾），如：
➢ It is cheap. 它很便宜。
➢ He won the race. 他赢得了比赛。
➢ It will rain tomorrow. 明天将下雨。
➢ They have cleaned the room. 他们已打扫好房间。

2) 疑问句
用以提出问题的句子（常以问号结尾），如：
➢ Do you hate your boss? 你讨厌你的老板吗？*一般疑问句。
➢ Is he tall? 他高吗？
➢ Will she come tomorrow? 她明天会来吗？
➢ Have you finished your work? 你已完成工作吗？
➢ What are you doing? 你在做什么？*特殊疑问句。
➢ Who is your headteacher? 你的校长是谁？
➢ Which book do you like? 你喜欢哪一本书？

① 三、四、五句型中，be 动词后的部分也可统称为表语。

第二章　关系从句

1.　关系从句

1)　限制性关系从句



如果你喜欢图中右边的书，你也可以用以下两个简单句来表达：

(1)　I like the book. 我喜欢这本书。

(2)　It is white. 这本书是白色的。

这两个句子可以合并：

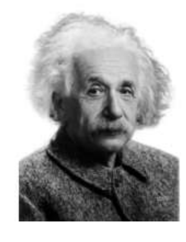
>> I like the book which is white①. 这喜欢这本白色的书。

我们称：

- I like the book 为主句(main clause) *主句可独立存在；
- which is white 为关系从句(relative clause) *关系从句不能独立存在；
- which 为关系代词(relative pronoun) *which 在关系从句中作主语；
- the book 为先行词(antecedent) *关系代词指代的就是先行词（which 指代的就是 the book），通常位于关系从句的最前面，起引导作用。关系从句相当于一个形容词修饰先行词（句中的 the book②）。

如果我们将 which is white 去掉，显然人们就会感到很困惑，不知道你所指的是哪一本书，在这种情况下，我们称 which is white 为限制性的关系从句(restrictive relative clause)，其不能去掉，否则我们谈论的对象就会变得不明确。在口语中，限制性关系从句前不会有停顿，在书面语中，其前面一般没有逗号③。

2)　非限制性关系从句



Name: Einstein
Birthplace: Germany
Career: a great physicist

我们可以用两个句子来表述左边的这张图：

(1)　Einstein was a great physicist. 爱因斯坦是伟大的物理学家。

(2)　He was born in Germany. 他出生在德国。

这两个句子可以合并：

---

① This sentence only exists in theory. In practice, it is *I like the white book* with *which is* left out and *white* moved before *the book*. This omission will be discussed in detail in other chapters.

② 关系从句也可称为形容词性从句，在传统语法中叫作定语从句。

③ The most common punctuation marks in English are: full stop (.), question mark(?), comma (,), colon (:), semi-colon (;), exclamation mark (!) and quotation mark ('…' or "…").
In speaking, we use pauses and the pitch of the voice to make what we say clear. In writing, punctuation plays a similar role for easier read. A sentence ends with a full stop, a question mark or an exclamation mark.
We use full stop, semi-colon, or (comma) + *and / but / so* to punctuate two main clauses. Examples:
- I saw you talking to that girl. Who is she?
- The bin needs emptying; it's full of rubbish.
- Her love for him turned to hate, and she tore up all his old letters. *You can't just use a comma to punctuate two main clauses.
- I was feeling hungry, so I made myself a sandwich.

We use colons to introduce lists, direct speech or explanation. Examples:
- To make a cake you need the following ingredients: butter, sugar, eggs, milk, flour, and salt.
- Then he said: 'I really cannot help you in any way.'
- Try to keep your flat clean and tidy: it will sell more easily. *explanation. We can use a dash (-) here instead.

We use brackets to add extra, non-essential information. Example: *Air fares to Africa don't come cheap (=are expensive)* .

>> Einstein, who was born in Germany, was a great physicist.

我们称：

- ➢ Einstein was a great physicist 为主句；
- ➢ who was born in Germany 为关系从句；
- ➢ who 为关系代词 *who 在关系从句中作主语；
- ➢ Einstein 为先行词 *who 指代的就是 Einstein。

如果我们将 who was born in Germany 去掉，我们谈论的对象（即 Einstein）还是明确的，在这种情况下，我们称 who was born in Germany 为非限制性的关系从句(nonrestrictive relative clause)，其只起增加非必要信息的作用。在口语中，非限制性关系从句前会有停顿，在书面语中，其前面一般有逗号。

2. 关系代词和关系副词

1) 复合词

我们先来看两个句子：

(1) In 1963 we moved to Boston. 在 1963 年，我们搬到了波士顿。

(2) My grandparents lived in Boston. 那时，我的祖父母住在波士顿。

这两个句子可以合并：

>> In 1963 we moved to Boston, in which my grandparents lived.

- ➢ In 1963 we moved to Boston 为主句；
- ➢ In which my grandparents lived 为关系从句；
- ➢ which 为关系代词 *which 在关系从句中作介词 in 的宾语，in which 作为一个整体引导关系从句。
- ➢ Boston 为先行词 *which 指代的就是 Boston。

考虑到 in which 的使用频率较高，我们可以用一个词 where 代替这个语言片断，从而使句子更加简洁：

>> In 1963 we moved to Boston, where my grandparents lived.

如果一个词代表一个常用的语言片断，我们称其为复合词，如上例中的 where （因为 where 在句中引导关系从句，我们也称其为关系副词）， 复合词在英语中很常见，对其的掌握是理解英语思维、学好英语的关键。

2) 常见的关系代词和关系副词

(1) 常见的关系代词：who; whom; which; whose; that。

(2) 常见的关系副词：when; where; why; that。

关系代词/关系副词	先行词	关系代词/关系副词在关系从句中担当的成分	示例
who	人	主语/宾语	➢ The people who called yesterday want to buy the house. 昨天打来电话的人想买这所房子。*the people (先行词); who (主语)。 ➢ My wife, who is out at the moment, will phone you when she gets back. 我太太现在出去了，回来时会给你打电话。 ➢ Our doctor, who we all like very much, is leaving. 常给我们看病的那个医生，我们都非常喜欢他，就要离开了。*our doctor (先行词); who (宾语)。
whom	人	宾语	➢ The person whom I saw was a coach. 我看到的那个人是一名教

			练。*the person (先行词); whom (宾语)。★whom 引导限制性关系从句时，常省略: >>The person I saw was a coach.
which	物/句子的一部分/句子	主语/宾语	➢ Take the book which is lying on the table. 拿桌子上的那本书。 ➢ Read the passage to which I referred in my talk. 读一读我在讲话中提到的那段文章 ➢ His best film, which won several awards, was about the life of Gandhi. 他的最佳影片，就是荣获几项奖的那部，是关于甘地生平的。 ➢ I said nothing, which (=I said nothing) made him very angry. 我什么也没说，这件事使他很生气。 ➢ We had to sleep in our wet clothes, which (=sleeping in our wet clothes) was most uncomfortable. 我们不得不穿着湿衣服睡，这令人很不舒服。 ➢ He has to work on Sundays, which (=working on Sundays) he doesn't like. 他星期天得工作，这是他不喜欢的。 ➢ When deeply absorbed in work, which (=deeply absorbed in work) he often was, he would forget all about eating or sleeping. 他常常聚精会神地工作，这时他会废寝忘食。 ➢ She was very patient towards the children, which (=very patient towards the children) her husband seldom was. 她对孩子们很耐心，她丈夫却很少这样。 ➢ Building maintenance workers were circulating through office space ensuring power had been restored, which it had (=been restored). 建筑维护工人穿梭在办公室间确保电力恢复，电力也确实已恢复。 ➢ The questions were all on opera, about which subject I know nothing. 所有的问题都是关于歌剧的，但对于歌剧我什么都不懂。 ➢ The postman comes at 6.30 in the morning, at which time I am usually fast asleep. 邮递员早晨 6 点 30 分来，这个时候我通常还睡着大觉呢。
whose (=of which/of whom)	人/物	修饰语(是一个复合词)	➢ The boy whose father is a police is pretty clever. 父亲为警察的那个男孩很聪明。 ➢ The book whose cover is yellow is thin. 那本黄皮的书很厚。 ➢ The friend whose dog I'm looking after is in China. 我替他照顾狗的那位朋友现在在中国。
when (=preposition+which)	时间	修饰语(是一个复合词)	➢ Sunday is the day when (=on which) very few people go to work. 星期日是没什么人上班的日子。 ➢ She remembered clearly that day when (=on which) she'd gone exploring the rockpools. 她清楚地记得她去岩石区潮水潭探险的那天。 ➢ Can't we go next week, when (=in which) I won't be so busy? 我们不能下周去吗？下周我不会如此忙。

where (=preposition+which)	地点	修饰语(是一个复合词)	➢ The hotel where (=at/in which) we spent our honeymoon has been demolished. 我度蜜月时住过的那家酒店已被拆除。 ➢ We walked up to the top of the hill, where (=on which) we got a marvellous view. 我们爬上了山顶，在那里我们看到了绝妙的景色。
why (=for+which)	原因	修饰语(是一个复合词)	➢ It was the reason why (=for which) she didn't come. 这就是她没有来的原因。
that (=who/whom/which /preposition+which) [1]	人/物/时间/地点/原因	主语/宾语/谓语名词/修饰语(是一个复合词)	➢ The letter that/which came this morning is from my father. 今天早上收到的信来自我父亲。 ➢ The clothes that/which are on the floor are dirty. 地上的衣服很脏。 ➢ The woman that/who spoke to me in the shop used to live next door. 跟我在商店说话的那个妇女以前住在隔壁。 ➢ The horses and workers that we need are enough. 我们需要的马匹和工人足够了。★先行词为 horses and workers，既有人也有物，此时只能用 that。 ➢ Tom's father lost his job the year that/when/in which he was born. 汤姆的父亲在他出生那年失业了。 ➢ She was not the pretty woman that she was before she married. 她已经不是结婚前的那个漂亮女人了。★先行词为 woman。that 也可以省略。
as (=a fact which)	句子	主语/宾语	➢ Cyprus, as you know, is an island in the Mediterranean. 如你所知，塞浦路斯是地中海的岛国。*as=Cyprus is an island in the Mediterranean. ➢ As is known to all, China is a developing country. 从所周知，中国是发展中国家。*as=China is a developing country. ➢ He is from the USA, as we can see from his accent. 从他的口音我们可以听出，他来自美国。*as=He is from the USA.

3. 练习

A. 用适当的关系代词或关系副词填空。

(1) My little sister, _____ is a painter, is in Japan at present.

(2) The man _____ lives in that house is my uncle.

(3) The clothes _____ are on the floor are dirty.

(4) The old man _____ I met in Beijing last year is his father.

(5) I can't find the books _____ I got from the library.

(6) The man _____ right eye is blind is Mr. Green.

(7) This is the pen _____ point is broken.

(8) My sisters, _____ photos I showed you yesterday, will come to see us this evening.

(9) My brother, _____ you met the other day, has gone abroad.

(10) Sunday is the only day _____ I can relax.

(11) This is the house _____ I was born.

[1] Only used in restrictive relative clause.

(12) I still remember the night _____ Nanjing was liberated.
(13) She moved to the city, _____ jobs are available.
(14) That's the reason _____ I wrote to him.
(15) _____ you know, Julia is leaving soon.

B. 单选：选择最合适的答案。

(1) This is the school _______ we visited last year[①].
A. that B. where C. who D. whose
(2) The man _______ is talking to our teacher is Betty's father.
A. which B. whom C. who D. what
(3) I will never forget the day _______ we spent in the old town with small houses.
A. who B. whom C. that D. when
(4) The house _______ Lu Xun used to live is now a museum.
A. which B. that C. in which D. there
(5) I hate the girl _______ name is Mary.
A. who B. whose C. whom D. that
(6) He is a teacher _______ I like very much.
A. who's B. whose C. / D. which
(7) I still remember the college and the teachers _______ I visited in London years ago.
A. what B. who C. that D. which
(8) A: What kind of movies do you like?
B: I like movies _______ scary monsters.
A. which has B. that have C. what has D. why have
(9) Whenever I met her, _______ was fairly often, she greeted me with a sweet smile.
A. who B. which C. when D. that
(10) They have won their last three matches, _______ I find a bit surprising.
A. that B. when C. what D. which
(11) _______ has always been expected, he has finally achieved his dream, _______ makes his parents so proud.
A. As; which B. Which; which C. Which; as D. As; as
(12) It's helpful to put children in a situation _______ they can see themselves differently.
A. that B. when C. which D. where
(13) In 1963 the UN set up the World Food Programme, one of _______ purposes is to relieve worldwide starvation.
A. which B. it's C. whose D. whom
(14) I have reached a point in my life _______ I am supposed to make decisions of my own.
A. which B. where C. how D. why
(15) My friend showed me round the town, _______ was very kind of him.
A. which B. that C. where D. it
(16) Scientists have advanced many theories about why human beings cry tears , none of _______ has been proved.
A. whom B. which C. what D. that
(17) I've become good friends with several of the students in my school _______ I met in the English speech contest last year.
A. who B. where C. when D. which

---

① Many questions in this book are from National College Entrance Examination (Gao Kao in China).

(18) Kane, ________sister I shared a room with when we were at college, has gone to work in Australia.

A. whom B. that C. whose D. her

(19) Many young people, most _______were well-educated, headed for remote regions to chase their dreams.

A. of which B. of them C. of whom D. of those

(20) We will put off the picnic in the park until next week, _______ the weather may be better.

A. that B. where C. which D. when

(21) Ted came for the weekend wearing only some shorts and a T-shirt, _______is a stupid thing to do in such weather.

A. this B. that C. what D. which

(22) I was born in New Orleans, Louisiana, a city _______ name will create a picture of beautiful trees and green grass in our mind.

A. which B. of which C. that D. whose

(23) She brought with her three friends, none of _______ I had ever met before.

A. them B. who C. whom D. these

(24) That's the new machine _______ parts are too small to be seen.

A. that B. which C. whose D. what

(25) After graduating from college, I took some time off to go travelling, _______ turned out to be a wise decision.

A. that B. which C. when D. where

(26) The school shop, _______ customers are mainly students, is closed few the holidays.

A. which B. whose C. when D. where

(27) She showed the visitors around the museum, the construction _______ had taken more than three years.

A. for which B. with which C. of which D. to which

(28) A bank is the place _______ they lend you an umbrella in fair weather and ask for it back when it begins to rain.

A. when B. that C. where D. there

(29) The days are gone _______ physical strength was all you needed to make a living.

A. when B. that C. where D. which

(30) It is the third time that she has won the race, _______ has surprised us all.

A. that B. where C. which D. what

(31) Sales director is a position _______ communication ability is just as important as sales

A. which B. that C. when D. where

(32) The air quality in the city, _______ is shown in the report, has improved over the past two months.

A. that B. it C. as D. what

(33) After the flooding, people were suffering in that area, _______ urgently needed clean water, medicine and shelter to survive.

A. which B. who C. where D. what

(34) By 16:30, _______ was almost closing time, nearly all the paintings had been sold.

A. which B. when C. what D. that

(35) Ellen was a painter of birds and of nature, _______, for some reason, had withdrawn from all human society.

A. which B. who C. where D. whom

(36) A lot of language learning,_______ has been discovered, is happening in the first year of life, so parents should talk much to their children during that period.

A. as B. it C. which D. this

(37) He may win the competition, _______ he is likely to get into the national team.

A. in which case B. in that case C. in what case D. in whose case

(38) There is no simple answer, ________ is often the case in science.

A. as B. that C. when D. where

第三章　名词性从句

1.　对象



左图中有什么？

你的答案可能是：一个女人、一个小孩、一头大象、一辆火车、一个篮球等。这些都是对象，简单一点说，世界上所有的事物（不管是具体的还是抽象的）都是对象，如：

teacher (老师，具体对象), cup (杯子), phone(电话), black(黑色), seven (七，抽象对象), idea(想法), to swim/swimming (游泳，动作对象)[1], eating an apple (吃苹果，动作对象), being beautiful (漂亮，状态对象), being in the room (在房间，状态对象), I want to go home (我想回家，事件对象), He hasn't received the letter (他还没有收到信，事件对象)[2]。所有的语言都是用来描述：

（1）　对象的动作：He is running. 他在奔跑。

（2）　对象的动作及其与另一个对象之间的动态关系：John drunk water. 约翰喝水。

（3）　对象的特征：She is short. 她很矮。

（4）　对象的身份：It is a tiger. 它是一只老虎。

（5）　两个对象之间的静态关系：The chair is behind the door. 椅子在门后面。

2.　名词性从句

事件对象（即句子）也可以看成一个整体，在句子中当成名词来用，此时我们称这个事件对象为名词性从句。

1)　陈述句用作名词性从句

在陈述句前加上引导词 that，如：

- **That he will win the election** is certain. 他将赢得选举，这是一定的。*He will win the election 是一个事件对象，用作名词，在句子中作主语。that 是一个功能词，没有实际意义，仅指出其后的句子是一个整体，用作名词。
- **That he passed the test** surprised me. 他通过了考试，这让我大吃一惊。
- It is a fact **that the earth is round.** 地球是圆的，这是一个实事。*为避免头重脚轻，平衡句子，that the earth is round 被 it 代替，并被置于句尾。
- She found **(that) the box was empty.** 她发现箱子是空的。*The box was empty 是一个事件对象，在句子中作宾语，此时引导词 that 可省略。
- We know **(that) greenhouse gases can affect the climate.** 我们知道温室气体会影响气候。
- The trouble is **that we don't have money.** 困难在于我们没有钱。
- The problem is **that she isn't in the town.** 问题是她不在城里。
- The idea **that she can repair the car is wrong**[3]**.** 她觉得自己能修好车，这个想法是错误的。
- Her suggestion **that Jack should leave is correct.** 他建议杰克应该离开，此建议是正确的。
- It's astonishing to me **that he should be absent.** 她竟然缺席了，这让我太吃惊了。

---

① An action object can be expressed in two ways: TO DO (infinitive with to) and DOING (-ing form). Examples: *Walking is good for you*; *It's difficult not smoking for a whole day*. *I'd prefer not to sit at the front*. **Not* is before TO DO/DOING.

② Note: *movement=moving or being moved; kill=killing; waste=wasting or being wasted; beauty=being beautiful; smoothness=being smooth.*

③ The idea (which is) that she can repair the car is wrong. ***Which is* is omitted.

2) 疑问句用作名词性从句

(1) 一般疑问句

首先将一般疑问句变成陈述句，然后在其前面加上 whether，如：

- **Whether he will come** isn't known. 他是否会来还未知。*will he come?-->he will come-->whether he will come（一个事件对象，在句中作主语）。
- I didn't know **if/whether he had a car.** 我不知道他是否有一辆车。*如果一个一般疑问句在句子中作宾语，可以用 whether 也可以用 if。
- The question is **whether he loves you.** 问题是他是否爱你。*does he love you?-->he loves you-->whether he loves you。
- We'll discuss the problem **whether he is competent**[①]**.** 我们将讨论他能否可以胜任这个问题。

(2) 特殊疑问句

首先将特殊疑问句变成陈述句，然后把特殊疑问词置于句首，如：

- **Where we will spend the holiday** isn't decided. 我们去哪度假这件事还没有确定。*Where will we spend the holiday?-->We will spend the holiday where-->Where we will spend the holiday（一个事件对象，在句中作主语）。
- **Who she is** doesn't matter. 她是谁，这个不重要。
- I don't know **who the girl riding a bike is.** 我不知道骑自行车的女孩是谁。
- The question is **where he lives.** 问题是他住在哪？*where does he live -->he lives where-->where he lives.
- My question, **why he didn't come,** hasn't been answered. 我的问题，他为什么没来，还没人回答。
- She asked me **who would look after the baby.** 她问我谁将照看这个婴儿。
- The problem is **who will water my plants when I am I away.** 问题是当我不在的时候谁来给我的植物浇水。
- I'm not sure **which she prefers.** 我不确定她更喜欢那一个。
- They did not consult us on **whose names should be put forward.** 他们没有咨询我们应该提名谁。
- We have solved the problem (of) **who was at fault.** 我们已弄清楚是谁的过失。
- I don't know **who wants what.** 我不清楚每个人的需求。

3) 感叹句用作名词性从句

将感叹句置于相应位置即可，如：

- Most people know **what a great scientist Edison became.** 大多数人都知道爱迪生是一个多么伟大的科学家。
- Everyone said **how awful the weather was.** 大家都在谈论天气是多么的恶劣。
- Nobody will believe **what difficulty we have had**/believe **how difficult it has been for us.** 没人会相信我们遇到过多么大的困难。
- It's incredible **how fast she can run.** 她能跑得很快，真是让人难以置信。
- I remember **what a good time I had at your party.** 我在你的聚会上玩得非常开心，我现在还记得。
- I read an account of **what an impression you had made.** 我读过一篇报道，讲述了你给大家留下了非常深刻的印象。

3. 练习

单选：选择最合适的答案。

---

① We'll discuss the problem (which is) whether he is competent.

(1) It suddenly occurred to him _______ he had left his keys in the office.

A. whether B. where C. which D. that

(2) It remains to be seen _______ the newly formed committee's policy can be put into practice.

A. that B. which C. what D. whether

(3) It was never clear _______ the man hadn't reported the accident sooner.

A. that B. how C. when D. why

(4) It's good to know _______ the dogs will be well cared for while we're away.

A. what B. whose C. which D. that

(5) The shocking news made her realize _______ terrible problems she would face.

A. what B. how C. that D. why

(6) A: Do you know _______ the meeting?

B: Tomorrow morning.

A. when they had B. when they are going to have

C. when did they had D. when are they going to have

(7) A: Mum, summer holiday is coming. I wonder _______.

B: How about Qinling Wild Zoo?

A. where can we go B. where we can go C. how we can go D. how we can go

(8) _______ his dream of going to college will come true is uncertain.

A. That B. Even if C. If D. Whether

(9) _______ caused the accident is still a complete mystery.

A. What B. That C. How D. Where

(10) The reason for her failure is _______ she was too proud.

A. Because B. why C. How D. that

(11) It is not a problem _______ we can win the battle; it's just a matter of time.

A. whether B. why C. when D. where

(12) Scientists have obtained more evidence _______ plastic is finding its way into the human body.

A. what B. that C. which D. where

(13) One reason for her preference for city life is _______ she can have easy access to places like shops and restaurants.

A. that B. how C. what D. why

(14) When changing lanes, a driver should use his turning signal to let other drivers know _______ .

A. he is entering which lane B. which lane he is entering

C. is he entering which lane D. which lane is he entering

(15) How much one enjoys himself travelling depends largely on _______ he goes with, whether his friends or relatives.

A. what B. who C. how D. why

(16) We haven't discussed yet _______ we are going to place our new furniture.

A. that B. which C. what D. where

(17) The fact has worried many scientists _______ the earth is becoming warmer and warmer these years.

A. what B. which C. that D. though

(18) He asked _______ for a violin.

A. did I pay how much B. I paid how much

C. how much did I pay D. how much I paid

(19) She asked me _______ I had returned the books to the library, and I admitted that I hadn't.

A. when B. where C. whether D. what

(20) Do not let any failures discourage you, for you can never tell _______ close you may be to victory.

A. how B. that C. which D. where

(21) When asked _______ they needed most, the kids said they wanted to feel important and loved.

A. what B. why C. whom D. which

(22) The mother asked her son _______.

A. what did he do the day before B. where did he find his lost wallet

C. what time he got up that morning D. that if he had finished his homework

(23) It surprised us all _______ Kate made such big progress in this final exam.

A. when B. that C. how D.whether

(24) I wonder how much _______.

A. the watch costs B. did the watch cost C. the watch costed D. does the watch cost

(25) _______ will win in the race?

A. Do you suppose who B. Whom you suppose

C. Do you suppose whom D. Who do you suppose

(26) _______ basic first-aid techniques will help you respond quickly to emergencies.

A. Known B. Having known C. Knowing D. Being known

(27) Shortly after suffering from a massive earthquake and _______ to ruins, the city took on a new look.

A. reducing B. reduced C. being reduced D. having reduced

(28) A: I wonder _______ you'll water this kind of flower.

B: Every other day.

A. how often B. how long C. how soon D. how much

(29) Cindy shut the door heavily and burst into tears. No one in the office knew _______ she was so angry.

A. where B. whether C. that D. why

(30) As a new graduate, he doesn't know _______ it takes to start a business here.

A. how B. what C. when D. which

(31) It is still under discussion _______ the old bus station should be replaced with a modern hotel or not.

A. whether B. when C. which D. where

(32) It is by no means clear _______ the president can do to end the strike.

A. how B. which C. that D. what

第四章　谓语

1.　时间、状态、语态及人称

每一个谓语都含有一个主动词(main verb)。通过增加助动词或变换动词形式的方法（或两种方法都用），我们可以把时间、状态、语态或人称信息附着在主动词上，形成一个谓语动词块：

时间：指动作发生的时间（过去、现在、将来及过去将来[①]）。

状态：指动作所处的状态：

1) **一般态**：即不提任何状态，我们也可以称其为零态。如：
   - I **work** in this company. 我在这家公司上班。
   - The food **is** on the table. 食物在桌子上。
2) **进行态**[②]：即动作正在进行中，如：
   - He **is playing** football. 他正在踢足球。
   - They **were reading.** 他们那时正在阅读。
3) **完成态**：即动作已完成，如：
   - Our guests **have arrived.** 我们的客人已经到了。
   - **Had** they **left** before you got there? 他们在你到达之前就离开了吗？
4) **完成进行态**：动作从前面的的某个时间开始，已部分完成，且还在进行中，如：
   - He **has been pulling** the weeds in the garden since 7 AM. 自早上 7 点以来，他就一直在园子里除草。
   - It **has been snowing** since yesterday. 自昨天以来就一直在下雪。

语态：指主语与谓语动词的关系：

1) **主动**：主语是谓语动作的发出者，如：
   - The robber **killed** the boss. 那个强盗把老板杀了。
   - She **carried** her baby in her arms. 她把婴儿抱在怀里。
2) **被动**：主语是谓语动作的承受者，如：
   - The boss **was killed** by the robber. 那个老板被强盗杀了。*老板是动作的承受者。介词 by 指出动作对象 killing 与动作的发出者对象 the robber 之间的静态逻辑关系[③]。

人称：第一人称指 I 和 WE，第二人称指 YOU，第三人称指 HE, SHE, IT, THEY 及其它事物。

时态：动作发生在某个时间，且处于某一个状态，这样时间和状态结合起来就形成十六种时态：

时间 \ 状态	一般	进行	完成	完成进行
过去	过去一般	过去进行	过去完成	过去完成进行
现在	现在一般	现在进行	现在完成	现在完成进行
将来	将来一般	将来进行	将来完成	将来完成进行
过去将来	过去将来一般	过去将来进行	过去将来完成	过去将来完成进行

① Future past (future in the past) is used to express the idea that in the past you thought something would happen in the future.
② The continuous aspect is also called progressive aspect.
③ Most phrasal and prepositional verbs which have an object can be passive. Examples: *We ran over a cat/The cat was run over; Has the doctor been sent for? The poor child is always being made fun of.*

2. 如何表示时间

过去	现在	将来	过去将来
I cleaned the widow. 我曾经擦洗过这个窗户。	I clean the window. 我擦洗这个窗户。	I will clean the window. 我将擦洗这个窗户。	He thought I would[①②] clean the window. 他曾以为我会擦洗这个窗户。
将谓语的主动词变成过去式，以表示过去。	谓语的主动词不发生任何变化，以表示现在。	在谓语的主动词前面加上助动词 will，以表示将来。	在谓语的主动词前面加上助动词 would，以表示过去将来。

3. 如何表示状态

一般	进行	完成[③]	完成进行
I clean the widow. 我擦洗窗户。	I am cleaning the window. 我正在擦洗窗户。	I have cleaned the window. 我已擦洗完窗户。	I have been cleaning the window since 8 am. 自早上 8 点以来，我一直在擦洗窗户。
谓语的主动词不用变化，也不用加任何助动词，以表示一般。	**be+主动词-ing:** 谓语的主动词加 ing（即变成现在分词），并在主动词的前面加上助动词 be，以表示进行。	**have+主动词-ed:** 谓语的主动词加 ed（即变成过去分词），并在主动词的前面加上助动词 have，以表示完成。	**have+been+主动词-ing:** 谓语的主动词加 ing（即变成现在分词），并在主动词的前面加上两个助动词 have been，以表示完成进行。

4. 如何表示语态

主动	被动
I clean the window. 我擦洗窗户。	The window is cleaned by me. 窗户被我擦洗。
谓语的主动词不用变化，也不用加任何助动词，以表示主动。	**be+主动词-ed:** 谓语的主动词加 ed（即变成过去分词），并在主动词的前面加上助动词 be，以表示被动。

5. 如何将语态、状态、时间及人称信息一起附在谓语主动词上

我们将通过分析 The window is being cleaned by me（这个窗户正在被我清洗）这个句子的谓语动词块来学习如何将语态、状态、时间及人称信息一起附在谓语主动词上：

第一步：表示语态

语态	主动：main verb	
	被动：be+main verb -ed	be+cleaned

① When the subject is ***I*** or ***we***, we can also use ***shall*** and ***should*** to indicate the future and the past future respectively but this is generally reserved for more formal or polite English, not very common in everyday speech and writing, especially in American English.

② We can also use ***be going to*** to indicate future and past future. Examples:

- The forecast said it was going to be hot tomorrow.
- I'm going to be twenty next month.

③ We use the present perfect especially to say that a finished action or event is connected with the present in some way. If we say that something has happened, we are thinking about the past and the present at the same time.

第二步：表示状态（将第一步的结果看成一个整体当成主动词）

状态	一般：main verb	
	进行：be+(main verb)-ing *只在第一步结果的第一个动词上加 ing。	be+(be+cleaned)-ing=be+being+cleaned *第一步的结果是 be cleaned，我们把它看成一个整体当成主动词，其第一个动词是 be，加上 ing 变成了 being。
	完成：have+(main verb)-ed *只在第一步结果的第一个动词上加 ed。	
	完成进行：have+been+(main verb) -ing *只在第一步结果的第一个动词上加 ing。	

第三步：表示时间及人称（将第二步的结果看成一个整体当成主动词）

时间	过去：将第二步结果的第一个动词变成过去式①。	
	现在：大部分情况下，第二步结果的第一个动词不需要变化②。	is+being+cleaned *第二步的结果是 be being cleaned，因为句子的主语 the window 为第三人单数，所以要将其第一个动词 be 变成 is。
	将来：在第二步结果的前面加上 will。	
	将来：在第二步结果的前面加上 would。	

我们通过以下几个例子加深理解：

➢ He is a scientist. 他是一名科学家。
第一步（主动）：be
第二步（一般）：be
第三步（现在，第三人称单数）：is

➢ They were reading. 那时他们正在阅读。
第一步（主动）：read
第二步（进行）：be+reading
第三步（过去）：were reading

➢ You will be severely punished. 你将被严厉惩罚。
第一步（被动）：be+punished
第二步（一般）：be+punished
第三步（将来）：will+be+punished

① The first part is ***be:*** change it to ***was*** if the subject is singular/uncountable and in third person; if not, change it to ***were***.
② The first part is ***be:*** change it to ***is*** if the subject is singular/uncountable and in third person; change it to ***am*** if the subject is ***I;*** change it to ***are*** in the other situations.
The first part isn't ***be:*** change it to its third person singular form (also called s-form and usually formed by adding -s) if the subject is singular/uncountable and in third person; if not, don't make any changes.

➢ I've finished my work. 我已经完成了工作。

第一步（主动）：finish

第二步（完成）：have+finished

第三步（现在）：have+finished

➢ The work has been finished by me. 工作已经被我做完了。

第一步（被动）：be+finished

第二步（完成）：have+been+finished

第三步（现在，第三人称单数）：has+been+finished

➢ I have been cleaning the window since 8 am. 自早上 8 点以来我就一直在擦洗窗户。

第一步（主动）：clean

第二步（完成进行）：have+been+cleaning

第三步（现在）：have+been+cleaning

6. 练习

指出以下各句中谓语动词块的语态、状态、时间及人称。

(1) My name is Susan.
(2) The human being is a primate.
(3) I was told about it yesterday.
(4) The house is being painted.
(5) She has been in her room for hours.
(6) She's been invited to a party.
(7) She wants to be a doctor
(8) Part of her article is taken from my book on the subject.
(9) They've been asking a lot of questions.
(10) We'll be starting in about half an hour.
(11) Smoking is not permitted.
(12) The problem is finding the time to get things done.
(13) He was just being rude.
(14) Rachel will be three in November.
(15) The ship had vanished without trace.
(16) A meeting will be held next Tuesday at 3 p.m.
(17) Maybe by then you will have changed your mind.
(18) We shall arrive tomorrow.
(19) Are you good at speaking in public.
(20) On Saturday, we will have been living in this house for a year.

第五章　限制性关系从句的简化

1.　限制性关系从句的简化

限制性关系从句中的重复信息大部分可以省略，如：

1)　The book **which is on the desk** is black. 桌子上的书是黑色的。

MC[①]**:** The book is black.

RRC[②]**：** which is on the desk.

-->The book **on the desk** is black[③]. *which 指的是 the book，作为重复信息，可以省略，然后我们将 is 变成 being（is 的时间为现在，跟主句谓语动词的时间一样，作为重复信息可以省略），因为 being 没有实际意义，所以也可以省略。

2)　The woman **who is beautiful** is in the bedroom. 那个漂亮的女人在卧室里。

MC: The woman is in the bedroom.

RRC： who is beautiful.

-->The **beautiful** woman is in the bedroom. *简化后，如只留下一个单词，此时通常将其移至先行词的前面。简化后的从句的时间取决于上下文，通常跟主句谓语动词的时间一致。当我们看到 the beautiful woman is in the bedroom 这个句子时，我们根据上下文（主句谓语动词 is），可以推测出 beautiful 这个简化的关系从句的时间为现在。

★如果对自己简化的从句没有把握，你可以通过还原它来验证简化是否正确。我们来看一下例子：The girl **who was beautiful** is in the bedroom**-->**The **beautiful** woman is in the bedroom.

我们根据上下文（简化后，主句谓语动词 is），还原得到：

MC: The woman **is** in the bedroom.

RRC： who **is** beautiful.

还原后，从句的谓语动词为 is（原句为 was），显然简化是不正确的，因而原句是不能简化的，只能写成：The girl **who was beautiful** is in the bedroom.

3)　The girl **who is drinking water** is beautiful. 那个正在喝水的女孩很漂亮。

MC: The girl is beautiful.

RRC： who is drinking water.

-->The girl **drinking water** is beautiful. *who 省略，is 变成 being，being 省略。在英语中，每一个谓语都含有一个主动词。通过增加助动词（be, do 或 have）或变换动词形式的方法（或两种方法都用），我们可以把时间、状态、语态或人称信息附着在主动词上，形成一个谓语动词块，同时我们还可以在这个谓语动词块上加上情态动词[④]，形成一个更大的谓语动词块，以表现语气（陈述、祈使或虚拟）。当一个句子被简化时，其谓语动词块常变为 **to do** 或 **doing** 形式。

在 who is drinking water 中 is drinking 是其谓语动词块，简化时采用 doing 的省略形式，即 is drinking-->being drinking，然后 being 也省略。

★为方便，BE 动词也归为 DO 动词（即一般动词）。

---

① MC is an acronym for main clause.

② RRC is an acronym for restrictive relative clause.

③ In English, people prefer to use neater sentences to express themselves, so the reduced form of *The book which is on the desk is black* is in common use.

④ Main modal verbs: *can, could, may, might, shall, should, will, would, must, ought to, used to, need, had better, and dare.*

4)　The house **which is being built** there is our new dorm. 那儿正在建的房子是我们的新宿舍。

MC: The house is our new dorm.

RRC： which is being built there.

-->The house **being built** there is our new dorm. *在 which is being built there 中 is being built 是谓语动词块，简化时采用 doing 的省略形式，即 is being built-->being being built，然后第一个 being 省略[1]。

5)　He has a burning ambition **which is to become famous.** 他有想成名的强烈愿望。

MC: He has a burning ambition.

RRC： which is to become famous.

-->He has a burning ambition **to become famous.**

6)　The girl **who wore a hat** slept. 戴帽子的女孩睡着了。

MC: The girl slept.

RRC： who wore a hat.

-->The girl **wearing** a hat slept. *wore 采用 doing 的省略形式变成 wearing。

7)　The people **who love peace** are kind. 热爱和平的人民是善良的。

MC: The people are kind.

RRC： who love peace

-->The people **loving peace** are kind. *loving people 可以形成复合词 peace-loving--->The **peace-loving** people are kind[2].

8)　The basketball **which/that I like** is red. 我喜欢的篮球是红色的。

MC: The basketball is red.

RRC： which/that I like.

-->The basketball **I like** is red. *which/that 指的是 the basketball，作为重复信息，可以省略，但限制性关系从句的谓语动词需保持不变，因为其主语 I 不是重复信息，不能省略。

9)　I like the room **which the girl is in**. 我喜欢那个女孩所在的房间。

MC: I like the room.

RRC： which the girl is in.

-->I like the room **the girl is in[3].**

10)　He is not the man **that he was**. 他已不是曾经的他了。

MC: He is not the man.

RRC： that he was.

-->He is not the man **he was.**

11)　The girl **who is beautiful** will come. 那个漂亮的女孩会来。

MC: The girl will come.

---

① The second ***being*** can't be left out or the aspect of the main verb will be missing.

② Similar examples: *a fast-growing economy; English-speaking countries; world-shaking events; a five-year-old boy; a two-hour test (=a test which lasts for two hours).*

③ Similar example: *Who on earth is that female he's with?*

RRC：who is beautiful.

-->The **beautiful** girl will come.

12) We are invited to a party **which will be held in our club next Friday.** 我们受邀参加将与下周五在我们俱乐部举行的聚会。

MC: We are invited to a party.

RRC：which will be held in our club next Friday.

-->We are invited to a party **to be held in our club next Friday.** *which 指 a party，作为重复信息，可以省略。will be held 是谓语动词块，因其时间为将来，所以采用 to do 的省略形式，变成 to to be held。

13) She has a large family **that she must support.** 她有一大家子需要养。

MC: She has a large family.

RRC：that she must support.

-->She has a large family **to support.** *must support 是谓语动词块，因含有情态动词 must，所以采用 to do 的省略形式，变成 to support。

14) Here are some books **that you can read on the way.** 这些书你可以在旅途中阅读。

MC: Here are some books.

RRC：that you can read on the way.

-->Here are some books **for you to read on the way.** *can read 是谓语动词块，因含有情态动词 can，所以采用 to do 的省略形式，变成 to read。you 不是重复信息，需在其前面加上介词 for 保留下来。for 描述 you（动作的发出者）与 to read（动作对象）[①]之间的静态逻辑关系。

15) It is time **when you should reconsider your decision.** 现在是你该重新考虑你的决定的时候了。

MC: It is time.

RRC：when you should reconsider your decision.

-->It is time **for you to reconsider your decision.** *should reconsider 是谓语动词块,，因含有情态动词 should，所以采用 to do 的省略形式，变成 to reconsider。when (=at which) 省略。you 不是重复信息，需在其前面加上介词 for 保留下来。

16) She must have time **in which she can pack.** 她需要有能够打包行李的时间。

MC: She must have time.

RRC：in which she can pack.

-->She must have time **to pack.** *can pack 是谓语动词块，因含有情态动词 can，所以采用 to do 的省略形式，变成 to pack[②]。因先行词为 time，按习惯介词 in 也省略。

17) He also had a revolver **with which he could defend himself.** 他也有一把可以用来自卫的左轮手枪。

MC: He also had a revolver.

RRC：with which he could defend himself.

-->He also had a revolver to defend himself with/He also had a revolver with which to defend himself. *常用第一种表达方式，第二种表达相对更正式[③]。

---

① *It's a good idea for you to finish the course and get a qualification.* **For* describes the same static relationship.

② *She must have time in which to pack.* * ***In which*** can be kept, but this isn't in common use.

③ Another example: *I need some information to base the article on; I need some information on which to base the article.*

18) They were the last **guests who arrived.** 他们是最后来的一批客人。

MC: They were the last guests.

RRC： who arrived.

-->They were the last guests to arrive. *arrived 是谓语动词块，因先行词被 last 修饰，按英语的习惯需采用 to do 的省略形式，变成 to arrive。在英语中有部分特例，需要记忆①。

2. 限制性关系从句的简化规则

在简化从句时，需遵循以下两条基本原则：

A. 简化后，省略的信息（如主语、谓语动词块的时间、状态或语态等），可以从上下文推测出来，且无歧义。

B. 简化后的句子相对更简洁。

通过分析大量来自权威语料库的句子，作者总结出了限制性关系从句的简化规则，如下表所示②：

<table>
<tr>
<td rowspan="3">1. 当RRC的谓语动词块不含情态动词时==>></td>
<td rowspan="3">1.1 当关系代词是RRC的主语时③ ==>></td>
<td>1.1.1 当 RRC 的谓语动词块的时间是将来或过去将来==>></td>
<td colspan="2">通常 RRC 的谓语动词块采用 TO DO 的省略形式，如：
➢ I will attend the meeting which will be held next month --> I will attend the meeting to be held next month.
➢ Are you going to the banquet to be given at the consulate?
➢ These are the major problems to be discussed at the meeting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td rowspan="2">1.1.2 当 RRC 的谓语动词块的时间是现在==>></td>
<td>1.1.2.1 当 RRC 的谓语动词块的状态为完成或完成进行==>></td>
<td>通常不简化 RRC④，如：
➢ She is looking for the man who has paid for the meal for her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2.2 当 RRC 的谓语动词块的状态为进行==>></td>
<td>当 MC 的谓语动词块的时间为现在、将来或过去将来时，通常 RRC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式⑤，如：
➢ The girl who is drinking water is beautiful --> The girl drinking water is beautiful.
➢ Who is the woman talking to Jim?
➢ We must keep a secret of the things being discussed here⑥.</td>
</tr>
</table>

① TO DO itself is not necessarily associated with the future/past future.

② Some of the extra examples in the footnote are difficult to understand. It is advised for you to read chapter 9 first, in which many detailed analyses of simple sentences are given.

③ When the antecedent is modified by an ordinary number/next/last/only/a superlative adjective, usually we change the verb group of the RRC to TO DO. Examples:

➢ Sheila was the first who arrived --> Sheila was the first to arrive.

➢ She was the only one to survive the crash.

④ There are a few exceptions. Examples：

➢ The road is blocked by a tree which has fallen--> The road is blocked by a fallen tree.

➢ The leaders of the uprising which had failed attempted to flee the country--> The leaders of the failed uprising attempted to flee the country.

➢ The prisoner who had escaped was soon recaptured--> The escaped prisoner was soon recaptured.

⑤ Let's look at an example: *The girl who is singing in the hall was a popular star.*
We can't reduce this sentence to ***The girl singing in the hall was a popular star***, since people will restore it to ***The girl who was singing in the hall was a popular star***, considering the time of the verb group of the MC is past. *In other words, the omitted information of the reduced sentence (time) can't be recovered from the context, so the reduction is incorrect.

⑥ More examples: ◎A pair of wildfires **burning in California's parched Sierra Nevada mountains** have forced the closure of much of Sequoia National Park -- including its most treasured areas, home to some of the largest trees on Earth. ◎There is not much

			1.1.2.3 当 RRC 的谓语动词块的状态为一般**==>>**	通常 RRC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，如： ➢ Anyone who touches that wire will get a shock--> Anyone **touching**[1] **that wire** will get a shock. ➢ His ability **to get on with people** is his chief asset.*...which is to get... ➢ What's the language **spoken in that country**[2]**?**	
		1.1.3 当 RRC 的谓语动词块的时间是过去**==>>**	**1.1.3.1** 当 RRC 的谓语动词块的状态为完成或完成进行**==>>**	通常不简化 RRC。	
			1.1.3.2 当 RRC 的谓语动词块的状态为进行**==>>**	通常 RRC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，如： ➢ The girl who was drinking water was beautiful --> The girl **drinking water** was beautiful. ➢ l knew nothing about the experiment **being conducted there.**	
			1.1.3.3 当 RRC 的谓语动词块的状态为一般**==>>**	**1.1.3.3.1** 当 RRC 的谓语动词块的第一部分是 BE==>>	通常 RRC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，如： ➢ The girl who was little was in the bedroom --> The **little** girl was in the bedroom. ➢ His decision **to resign** was welcomed by the Opposition[3].

clearance for tall vehicles **passing under this bridge.**

[1] DOING itself is not, in spite of its appearance, necessarily associated with the continuous aspect.

[2] More examples: ◎Soldiers **timid or cowardly** don't fight well. ◎Soldiers **normally timid** don't fight well. ◎A man **usually honest** will sometimes cheat. ◎The flowers **smelling sweet in the botanic garden** attract the visitors to the beauty of nature. ◎Is there anybody **injured**? ◎Here is a leaflet **giving full particulars of the plan.** ◎Everything **belonging to you** should be marked with your own name. ◎They plan to build a highway **leading into the mountains.** ◎Long-distance coaches **departing from the two cities** have also been suspended. ◎The picture **hanging on the wall** is painted by my nephew. ◎The government plans to bring in new laws **forcing parents to take more responsibility for the education of their children.** ◎There are many other examples **reflecting the development of Chinese writing.** ◎There is a great deal of evidence **indicating that music activities engage different parts of the brain.**

[3] More examples: They're problems **left over by history**. ◎Is there anything **planned for tonight ?** ◎Suddenly there appeared a young woman **dressed in green.** ◎The experience **gained** will be of great value to us. ◎The people **on the bus** were singing.

<table>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>1.1.3.3.2 当 RRC 的谓语动词块的第一部分是静态动词①
==>></td><td>通常 RRC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，如：
➢ The girl who wore a hat slept--> The girl wearing a hat slept②.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="5">1.2 当关系代词是 RRC 的宾语或谓语名词时，通常只有关系代词可以省略③，如：
➢ I like the toy which you made --> I like the toy you made.
➢ I like the room the girl is in.
➢ He is not the man that he was.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">2. 当 RRC 的谓语动词块含有任意以下情态动词（且含有如括号里所示的意义）时：
can/could (表能力),
must (表义务),
should/ought to (表义务),
will/would(表意愿或习惯),
should (表意外惊讶)==>></td><td colspan="3">通常 RRC 的谓语动词块采用 TO DO 的省略形式，如：
➢ I have a lot of work that you must do --> I have a lot of work for you to do.
➢ I am looking for a house in which you can live --> I am looking for a house for you to live in.
➢ Here's a saw for you to cut it with.
➢ This is not the right attitude to take.
➢ He is not a man to bow before difficulties. *Indicating willingness④.
➢ What have I said to make you so angry? *Should indicates surprise.</td></tr>
</table>

3. 练习

A. 尝试简化以下句子中的关系从句。

(1) She wears a coat **which is white.**

(2) The basketball **which is red is very expensive.**

(3) One of them was carrying a bag **which was full of money.**

(4) The mobile **which is in the box** is mine.

(5) After I had left a small village **which was in the south of France,** I drove on to the next town.

(6) The thief **who was with the money** got such a fright that he dropped the bag.

---

① State verbs express states or conditions which are relatively static, including verbs of perception, cognition, the senses, emotion and state of being and they are usually not used in continuous aspects. Examples: appear, believe, belong, consider, consist, contain, cost, doubt, exist, fit, hate, hear, have, know, like, love, matter, mean, need, owe, own, prefer, remember, resemble, seem, suppose, suspect, understand, want, wish.

★ If the verb group of the RRC expresses a single complete action, usually the RRC can't be reduced. For example:

➢ The boy who broke the window yesterday morning is my little brother. *We can't reduce this sentence to ***The boy breaking the window yesterday morning is my little brother,*** since people will restore it to ***The boy who was breaking the window yesterday morning is my little brother***, considering the context (yesterday morning).

➢ There was a noise that woke me up.

But there are some exceptions. For example:

Malala Yousafzai, the Nobel Peace Prize-winning Pakistani activist, has gotten married, she announced on Instagram on Tuesday.

② More example: A petition was circulated **asking for a longer lunch break.** *It is stylistically preferable for the part following the verb to be longer than the part preceding it. In this example the subject is ***a petition asking for a longer lunch break***, but the reduced RRC is placed after the verb.

③ But when the time of the verb group of the RRC is future or past future, there are a few exceptions. For example:

➢ I have decided the day on which I will pay him a visit-->I have decided the day on which to pay him a visit/I have decided the day to pay him a visit on.

④ More examples: They would raise some money **with which to buy medicines.** ◎There's nothing **to get excited about.** ◎I need a vase **to put these flowers in.**

(7) The man **who is sitting by my side** is my uncle.
(8) Jane joined the line of people **who were waiting for the bus.**
(9) Jane expressed a wish **which was to earn her own living.**
(10) I don't trust his promise **which is to come for a visit.**
(11) I live in a very old town **which is surrounded by beautiful woods.**
(12) The girl **who was injured in the car accident yesterday** is her classmate.
(13) I showed my students some old maps **which were borrowed from the library.**
(14) The trees **which were blown down in the storm** have been moved off the road.
(15) Here is a map **which shows you how to get there.**
(16) Look over there—there's a very long, winding path **which leads up to the house**.
(17) Many buildings in the city need repairing, but the one **which will be repaired first** is the library.
(18) Are you going to the banquet **which will be given at the consulate?**
(19) We have a lot of things **that we must do today.**
(20) There is nothing **that can be done now.**
(21) I' m hungry. Get me something **that I can eat.**
(22) I want someone **to whom I can talk.**
(23) He only had long nights **in which he could study.**
(24) Here are the letters **which the manager should sign.**
(25) I have some work **that you must do.**
(26) It's time **we should leave.**
(27) Where are the things **which should be taken to her?**
(28) She is not a girl **who will act rashly.**
(29) He is not a man **who will bow before difficulties.**
(30) Sheila was the first **that arrived**.
(31) She was the only one **that survived the crash.**
(32) He was the only foreigner **who was given such an honour.**

B. 单选：选择最合适的答案。

(1) The picture _______ on the wall is painted by my nephew.
A. having hung B. hanging C. hangs D. being hung
(2) When I got back home I saw a message pinned to the door _______ "Sorry to miss you; will call later."
A. read B. reads C. to read D. reading
(3) Recently a survey _______ prices of the same goods in two different supermarkets has caused heated debate among citizens.
A. compared B. comparing C. compares D. being compared
(4) I have a lot of readings _______ before the end of this term.
A. completing B. to complete C. completed D. being completed
(5) The traffic rule says young children under the age of four and _______ less than 40 pounds must be in a child safety seat.
A. being weighed B. to weigh C. weighed D. weighing
(6) The play _______ next month aims mainly to reflect the local culture.
A. produced B. being produced C. to be produced D. having been produced
(7) For breakfast he only drinks juice from fresh fruit _______ on his own farm.

A. grown B. being grown C. to be grown D. to grow

(8) When I handed the report to John, he said that George was the person ________.

A. to send B. for sending it C. to send it to D. for sending it to

(9) There are five pairs ________, but I'm at a loss which to choose.

A. to be chosen B. to choose from C. to choose D. choosing

(10) Nowadays electrical energy ________ from the sun has become the most widely used energy.

A. comes B. coming C. to come D. came

(11) So far nobody has claimed the money ________ in the library.

A. discovered B. to be discovered C. discovering D. having discovered

(12) On receiving a phone call from his wife ________ she had a fall, Mr. Gordon immediately rushed home from his office.

A. says B. said C. saying D. to say

(13) We're having a meeting in half an hour. The decision ________ at the meeting will influence the future of our company.

A. to be made B. being made C. made D. having been made

(14) John has really got the job because he showed me the official letter ________ him it.

A. offered B. offering C. to offer D. to be offered

(15) The room is empty except for a bookshelf ________ in one corner.

A. standing B. to stand C. stands D. stood

第六章　非限制性关系从句的简化

1.　非限制性关系从句的简化

非限制性关系从句中的重复信息大部分可以省略，如：

1)　Robert, **who is our teacher,** likes fishing. 罗伯特是我们的老师，他喜欢钓鱼。

MC: Robert likes fishing.

NRC[①]**:** who is our teacher.

-->Robert, our teacher, likes fishing.

2)　The building, **which was painted red,** looks very attractive. 这座建筑被粉刷成了红色，看起来非常漂亮。

MC: The building looks very attractive.

NRC: which was painted red.

-->The building, painted red, looks very attractive.

3)　His first book, **which will be published next month,** is based on a true story. 他的第一本书将于下个月出版，其来源于一个真实的故事。

MC: His first book is based on a true story.

NRC: which will be published next month.

-->His first book, to be published next month, is based on a true story.

4)　The old man, **who has worked abroad for twenty years,** is on the way back to his motherland. 这位老人已在海外工作了二十年，现在正在回祖国的路上。

MC: The old man is on the way back to his motherland.

NRC: who has worked abroad for twenty years.

-->The old man, having worked abroad for twenty years, is on the way back to his motherland.

5)　It rained heavily in the south, **which caused serious flooding in several provinces.** 南部大雨滂沱，使好几个省发生了严重的水灾。

MC: It rained heavily in the south.

NRC: which caused serious flooding in several provinces.

-->It rained heavily in the south, causing serious flooding in several provinces. *which 指 it rained heavily in the south。

6)　He missed the train, **which was a great pity.** 好可惜，他错过了火车。

MC: He missed the train.

NRC: which was a great pity.

-->He missed the train, a great pity. *which 指 he missed the train。

7)　Mike found his missing car in the street outside his house, **which looked newly cleaned and polished.** 麦克发现他丢失的汽车在自己房子的外面的街道上，看起来刚被清洗并抛光过。

① NRC is an acronym for nonrestrictive relative cause.

MC: Mike found his missing car in the street outside his house.
NRC: which looked newly cleaned and polished.
-->Mike found his missing car in the street outside his house, looking newly cleaned and polished. *which 指 his missing car。

2. 非限制性关系从句的简化规则

通过分析大量来自权威语料库的句子，作者总结出了非限制性关系从句的简化规则，如下表所示：

<table>
<tr>
<td rowspan="5">1. 当 NRC 的谓语动词块不含情态动词时 ==>></td>
<td rowspan="5">1.1 当关系代词是 NRC 的主语时 ==>></td>
<td>1.1.1 当 NRC 的谓语动词块的时间是将来或过去将来==>></td>
<td colspan="2">通常 NRC 的谓语动词块采用 TO DO 的省略形式，如：
➢ His first book, which will be published next month, is based on a true story--> His first book, to be published next month, is based on a true story.
➢ His last appeal, for his son to visit him, was never delivered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td rowspan="3">1.1.2 当 NRC 的谓语动词块的时间是现在 ==>></td>
<td>1.1.2.1 当 NRC 的谓语动词块的状态为完成或完成进行==>></td>
<td>通常 NRC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，如：
➢ The old man, who has worked abroad for twenty years, is on the way back to his motherland--> The old man, having worked abroad for twenty years, is on the way back to his motherland.
➢ Many Chinese brands, having developed their reputations over centuries, are facing new challenges from the modern market.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2.2 当 NRC 的谓语动词块的状态为进行 ==>></td>
<td>通常 NRC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，如：
➢ The famous singer is traveling across the country, promoting her new album[1].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2.3 当 NRC 的谓语动词块的状态为一般 ==>></td>
<td>通常 NRC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式[2]，如：
➢ The experiment, intended to test the theory, will be carried out tomorrow.
➢ There is a note pinned to the door saying when the shop will open again[3].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3 当 NRC 的谓语</td>
<td>1.1.3.1 当 NRC 的谓语</td>
<td>通常 NRC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，</td>
</tr>
</table>

[1] It is usually seen as an independent clause.
[2] But there are some exceptions. For example:
The team has lost the last two games and, to make matters worse, two of its best players are injured.
[3] More examples: He is in charge of the project, which is more remarkable still--> **More remarkable still,** he is in charge of the project. ****Which*** refers to the event object expressed by the main clause. Please note that the reduced clause is moved to the front of the main clause. ◎He may be late. **Worse stilt,** he may not come at all. ◎European football is played in 80 countries, **making it the most popular sport in the world.** ◎The hospital has recently obtained new medical equipment, **allowing more patients to be treated.** ◎Linda works for the Minnesota Manufacturing and Mining Company, **known as 3M.** ◎In our village, about 1,000 meters north of my house, stands an old temple **dating back to the 17th century.** ◎The transmission rate, or R-rate, currently stands at 0.7, Health Minister Magnus Heunicke tweeted Wednesday, **meaning that the epidemic is continuing to decline.**

		动词块的时间是过去 **==>>**	动词块的状态为完成或完成进行**==>>**	如： ➢ The twins, who had been separated for so long, held each other and burst into tears --> The twins, **having been separated so long**, held each other and burst into tears. ➢ The manager, **having made it clear to us that he didn't agree with us,** left the meeting room.	
			1.1.3.2 当 NRC 的谓语动词块的状态为进行 **==>>**	通常 NRC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，如： ➢ The park was full of people,**enjoying themselves in the sunshine.** ➢ She glanced with disgust at the cat, **mewing plaintively.**	
			1.1.3.3 当 NRC 的谓语动词块的状态为一般 **==>>**	**1.1.3.3.1** 当 NRC 的谓语动词块的第一部分是 BE**==>>**	通常 NRC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，如： ➢ The building, which was painted red, looks very attractive--> The building, **painted red,** looks very attractive. ➢ Henry, **terribly embarrassed,** blushed too[1][2].
				1.1.3.3.2 当 NRC 的谓语动词块的第一部分是静态动词[3] **==>>**	通常 NRC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，如： ➢ Romeo, **believing that Juliet was dead,** decided to kill himself. ➢ The doctor, **not wishing to**

[1] More examples: The soldiers, **normally timid,** fought bravely. ◎The man, **rather nervous,** opened the letter. ◎Mr. Cooper, **deeply moved**, thanked him again and again. ◎Tom, **horrified at what he had done,** could at first say nothing. ◎Shelley, **astonished,** urged her to explain. ◎The computer centre, **opened last year,** is very popular among the students in this school. ◎His chief hobby, **sailing a boat,** cost him most of his salary. ◎**Most important,** his report offered prospects of a great profit. ◎**Strange,** it was she who initiated divorce proceedings. ◎She was standing, **a picture of innocence.** ◎**Unknown to his wife,** Ron had been having an affair.

[2] We can't reduce ***The man restrained the woman, who was aggressive*** to ***The man restrained the woman, aggressive*** since people may understand that the man was aggressive, given that the implied subject of a reduced clause is usually the same as that of the main clause.
But we can reduce ***She glanced with disgust at the cat, which was quiet in her daughter's lap/which was stretched out on the rug/which was mewing plaintively*** to ***She glanced with disgust at the cat, quiet in her daughter's lap/stretched out on the rug/mewing plaintively*** since the context tells us that the subject of the reduced clause is ***the cat***.

[3] There is an exception: When the first part of the verb group of the NRC isn't a state verb but the relative pronoun refers to the MC, we can change the verb group of the NRC to DOING. For example:
➢ A small plane crashed into a hillside five miles east of the city, which killed all four people on board--> A small plane crashed into a hillside five miles east of the city, killing all four people on board.
➢ It rained heavily in the south, which caused serious flooding in several provinces--> It rained heavily in the south, causing serious flooding in several provinces.

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="2"></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>alarm her, didn't tell her how serious her condition was[1].</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">1.2 当关系代词不是 NRC 的主语时
==>></td><td colspan="3">通常 NRC 不能简化。</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">2. 当 NRC 的谓语动词块含有任意以下情态动词（且含有括号里所示的意义）时：
can/could (表能力)==>></td><td colspan="4">通常 NRC 的谓语动词块采用 TO DO 的省略形式，如：
➢ This herb, which can be found in Asian, is poisonous--> This herb, to be found in Asian, is poisonous.</td></tr>
</table>

3. 练习

A. 尝试简化以下句子中的关系从句。

(1) Diane was twenty years old, **who was the youngest in the family**.

(2) It was Albert, **who was the husband of Molly's sister**.

(3) I returned the letter, **which was unopened.**

(4) The man wanted to fly to Rockall, **which is a lonely island in the Atlantic Ocean.**

(5) The Olympic Games, **which were first played in 776 B.C.,** did not include women players until 1912.

(6) Tsinghai University, **which was founded in 1911,** is home to a great number of outstanding figures.

(7) More highways have been built in China, **which makes it much easier for people to travel form one place to another.**

(8) The island, **which is joined to the mainland by a bridge,** is easy to go to.

(9) A small plane crashed into a hillside five miles east of the city, **which killed all four people on board.**

(10) Dina, **who had struggled for months to find a job as a waitress,** finally took a position at a local advertising agency.

B. 单选：选择最合适的答案。

(1) Mr. Smith, ______ of the ______ speech, started to read a novel.
A. tired; boring B. tiring; bored C. tired; bored D. tiring; boring

(2) European football is played in 80 countries, ______ it the most popular sport in the world.
A. making B. makes C. made D. to make

(3) Play, often ______ as an activity for young children, is still important in the social development of teenagers.
A. to see B. seeing C. to be seen D. seen

(4) This school, ______ for two years, is intended for the disabled children.
A. being built B. having built C. having been built D. was built

(5) The schedule, originally ______ out last week, had to be canceled because of the unexpected snow storm.

[1] More examples: Those youngsters, **shouldering spades and hoes,** left merrily for the fields. ◎An old peasant, **bringing his own food,** volunteered as guide for us. ◎The three Chinese astronauts **living in space for 90 days** have returned to Earth, **marking an end to China's longest-ever crewed mission.** ◎The cooling wind swept through out bedroom windows, **making air conditioning unnecessary.** ◎He mistook me for a teacher, **causing me some embarrassment.** ◎Parker scribbled a note to Sullivan before deplaning, **expressing his gratitude and pleasure at having met and spoken with her.** ◎The leader, **finding the rule unfair for women,** suggested it be banned. ◎The next week, a family spokesperson issued a statement **indicating that the injury was more serious and outlining more details of the incident.** ◎Two days after the shooting, Murdaugh released a statement **saying he was entering rehab.** ◎A few days after the interview, I received a letter **offering me admission to the university.**

A. carried B. to be carried C. being carried D. was carried

(6) Shanghai, _______ on the Huangpu River, is the largest city of China.

A. being situated B. situated C. be situated D. situating

(7) A 3G mobile phone, _______ to be most useful and fashionable, is popular with some teenagers.

A. consider B. considering C. considered D. to be considered

(8) So far, several cases of a disease, _______ as H1N1, are reported to have been found in the country.

A. knowing B. to be known C. having known D. known

(9) The twins, ______ so long, held each other and burst into tears.

A. being separated B. having been separated C. having separated D. had been separated

(10) Fireworks, ______ of gun powder or flash powder ______ in a tight paper tube, make the big flash or boom effect.

A. consisting; wrapping B. consisting; wrapped

C. consisted; wrapped D. being consisted; wrapped

(11) The rare fish, ______ from the cooking pot, has been returned to the sea.

A. saved B. saving C. to be saved D. having saved

(12) "Genius" is a complicated concept, ______ many different factors.

A. involved B. involving C. to involve D. being involved

(13) The lecture, ______at 7:00 pm last night, was followed by an observation of the moon with telescopes.

A. starting B. being started C. to start D. to be started

第七章　并列分句的简化

1.　并列分句的简化

当两个或两个以上独立的句子所表达的意思关系紧密时，我们可以将他们用 and 联结起来，其中的任何一个句子都称为并列分句。并列分句中的重复信息大部分可以省略，如：

1)　My little sister is tall **and her hair is black.** 我的妹妹身材高挑，有一头黑发。

IC 1[①]：My little sister is tall.

IC 2：Her hair is black.

-->My little sister is tall, her hair black. *简化后，and 被逗号所取代。

2)　Bats are surprisingly long-lived creatures **and some have a life span of around 20 years.** 蝙蝠是令人惊叹的长寿生物，有的能活约 20 年。

IC 1：Bats are surprisingly long-lived creatures.

IC 2：**Some have a life span of around 20 years.**

-->Bats are surprisingly long-lived creatures, some having a life span of around 20 years.

3)　They were walking in the street **and they were looking for somewhere to stay.** 他们在街上走着，想找一个住的地方。

IC 1：They were walking in the street.

IC 2：They were looking for somewhere to stay.

-->They were walking in the street, looking for somewhere to stay.

4)　**He didn't realize that he was in great danger** and he walked deeper into the forest. 没有意识到自己身处险境，他向森林越走越深。

IC 1：**He didn't realize that he was in great danger.**

IC 2：He walked deeper into the forest.

-->Not realizing that he was in great danger, he walked deeper into the forest. * 注意 not 要位于 realizing 之前。

5)　My cousin came to see me from the country **and he brought me a full basket of fresh fruits.** 我表兄从乡下来看我，给我带来了一篮子各种新鲜水果。

IC 1: My cousin came to see me from the country.

IC 2: He brought me a full basket of fresh fruits.

-->My cousin came to see me from the country, bringing me a full basket of fresh fruits.

6)　Betty pretended to be cheerful **and she said nothing about the argument.** 贝蒂假装开心，对那次争论什么也没说。

IC 1: Betty pretended to be cheerful.

IC 2: She said nothing about the argument.

-->Betty pretended to be cheerful, saying nothing about the argument.

---

① IC is an acronym for independent clause.

7) He had a wonderful childhood **and he traveled with his mother to all corners of the world.** 他有一个很棒的童年，跟着妈妈在世界各地旅行。

IC 1: He had a wonderful childhood.

IC 2: He traveled with his mother to all corners of the world.

-->He had a wonderful childhood, traveling with his mother to all corners of the world.

8) Andy and Ruby were the first to reach the top of Mount Tai **and they were tired and short of breath.** 安迪和鲁比最先到达泰山顶，累得气喘吁吁的。

IC 1: Andy and Ruby were the first to reach the top of Mount Tai.

IC 2: They were tired and short of breath.

-->Andy and Ruby were the first to reach the top of Mount Tai, tired and short of breath/Tired and short of breath, Andy and Ruby were the first to reach the top of Mount Tai.

9) He came into the room and **sat down on the sofa.** 他走进房里，在沙发上坐了下来。

IC 1: He came into the room.

IC 2: (He) sat down on the sofa.

-->He came into the room, sitting down on the sofa/Coming into the room, he sat down on the sofa.

10) **The match was over** and they went home. 比赛结束后，他们回家了。

IC 1: The match was over.

IC 2: They went home.

-->The match over, they went home.

11) **All the money had been spent** and we started looking for work. 所有的钱花完后，我们开始找工作。

IC 1: All the money had been spent.

IC 2: We started looking for work.

-->All the money having been spent, we started looking for work[①].

12) The tall building had been attacked by terrorists and it collapsed. 这座高楼被恐怖分子攻击后倒塌了。

IC 1: The tall building had been attacked by terrorists.

IC 2: It collapsed.

-->Having been attacked by terrorists, the tall building collapsed[②].

13) **Tom is dressed in a white uniform** and he looks more like a cook than a doctor. 汤姆穿着一身白工作服，不像医生倒更像一个厨师。

IC 1: Tom is dressed in a white uniform

IC 2: He looks more like a cook than a doctor.

-->Dressed in a white uniform, Tom looks more like a cook than a doctor.

14) I send you $100 today **and the rest will follow in a year.** 我今天给你寄 100 美元，余下的会在一年内寄给你。

---

① Similar example: *The lights having gone out, we couldn't see a thing.*

② Similar examples: *Having lost his job, he'd begun to interest himself in local voluntary work; Having waited an hour, the crowd were getting impatient.*

IC 1: I send you 100 dollars today.
IC 2: The rest will follow in a year.
-->I send you 100 dollars today, the rest to follow in a year.

15) We shall assemble at ten forty-five **and the procession will start moving at precisely eleven.** 我们将在 10 点 45 分集合， 游行 11 点整开始。
IC 1: We shall assemble at ten forty-five.
IC 2: The procession will start moving at precisely eleven.
-->We shall assemble at ten forty-five, the procession to start moving at precisely eleven.

16) I arrived at the shop **and I only found I'd left all my money at home.** 我到商店却发现钱全落在家了。
IC 1:I arrived at the shop.
IC 2: I only found I'd left all my money at home.
-->I arrived at the shop only to find I'd left all my money at home. *因为第二个并列分句表达一个意想不到的结果，按习惯采用 TO DO 的省略形式①。

2. 并列分句的简化规则

通过分析大量来自权威语料库的句子，作者总结出了并列分句的简化规则，如下表所示：

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="3">1. 当 IC 的谓语动词块不含情态动词时==>></td><td>1.1 当 IC 的谓语动词块的时间是将来或过去将来==>></td><td colspan="2">通常 IC 的谓语动词块采用 TO DO 的省略形式，如：
➢ We shall assemble at ten forty-five and the procession will start moving at precisely eleven-->We shall assemble at ten forty-five, the procession to start moving at precisely eleven.
➢ The plan was that the two parties should first reach an agreement on the basic principle, the details to be worked out later.
★ 但有一种特殊情形：如果两个 IC 的主语相同，且它们的谓语动词所表示的动作同时或相继发生，通常其中的一个 IC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，如：
➢ I will sit here reading the book at this time tomorrow.
➢ They'll send you the book for $ 2.75, postage included.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">1.2 当 IC 的谓语动词块的时间是现在==>></td><td>1.2.1 当 IC 的谓语动词块的状态为完成或完成进行==>></td><td>通常 IC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，如：
➢ I have just ate an apple and I don’t want to eat anything now-->Having just ate an apple, I don’t want to eat anything now.
➢ Not having completed the programme, they have to stay there for another two weeks②.</td></tr>
<tr><td>1.2.2 当 IC 的谓语动词块的状态为进行==>></td><td>通常 IC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，如：
➢ The famous singer is traveling across the country, promoting her new album.</td></tr>
</table>

① TO DO and DOING can also express a comment on the sentence. Examples: **To be frank,** you didn't make a very good impression. ◎I'm a bit tired of sightseeing, **to tell you the truth.** ◎**Strictly speaking,** that school is not very old. ◎I think, **personally speaking,** it's a good idea.
② More examples: **Having been invited to speak,** I'll start making preparations tomorrow. ◎**Having suffered from heart trouble for years,** Professor White has to take some medicine with him wherever he goes. ◎**Having suffered such heavy pollution already,** it may now be too late to clean up the river.

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="5"></td><td rowspan="2"></td><td></td><td colspan="2">➢ Don’t just stand there gawking at those girls!</td></tr>
<tr><td>1.2.3 当 IC 的谓语动词块的状态为一般==>></td><td colspan="2">通常 IC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，如：
➢ Bats are surprisingly long-lived creatures and some have a life span of around 20 years-->Bats are surprisingly long-lived creatures, some having a life span of around 20 years.
➢ Everything considered, his plan seems better.
➢ Written in simple English, the book is easy to read[1].</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">1.3 当 IC 的谓语动词块的时间是过去==>></td><td>1.3.1 当 IC 的谓语动词块的状态为完成或完成进行==>></td><td colspan="2">通常 IC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，如：
➢ The tall building had been attacked by terrorists and it collapsed-->Having been attacked by terrorists, the tall building collapsed.
➢ Her aunt having left the room, I asked Ann for some personal help[2].</td></tr>
<tr><td>1.3.2 当 IC 的谓语动词块的状态为进行==>></td><td colspan="2">通常 IC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，如：
➢ They were walking in the street and they were looking for somewhere to stay-->They were walking in the street, looking for somewhere to stay.
➢ The molten metal was being cooled in the air and the molten metal hardened --> Being cooled in the air, the molten metal hardened.
➢ She was lying in bed crying[3].</td></tr>
<tr><td>1.3.3 当 IC 的谓语动词块的状态为一般==>></td><td>1.3.3.1 当 IC 的谓语动词块的第一部分是 BE==>></td><td>通常 IC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，如：
➢ The match was over and they went home --> The match over, they went home.
➢ The purse not yet found, we went to the police[4].</td></tr>
</table>

[1] More examples: **Ripe,** these apples are sweet. ◎**Enthusiastic,** they make good students. ◎We often provide our children with toys, footballs or basketballs, **thinking that all children like these things.** ◎Please fill in this form, **giving your name, address, etc.** ◎More and more people are signing up for Yoga classes nowadays, **taking advantage of the health and relaxation benefits.** ◎The glass doors have taken the place of the wooden ones at the entrance, **letting in the natural light during the day.** ◎West of our school lies our stadium, **seating about 5000 people in all.** ◎**Smelling sweet and fresh,** this kind of food is so popular with local people and the tourists. ◎**Of the obligatory elements,** the main verb is the one that wholly or largely determines what form the rest of the structure will take. ◎The man is a fool, **a complete idiot.**

[2] More examples: **The damaged window having been paid for by the parents,** the police were not called. ◎**Having found a hotel,** they began to look for a restaurant. ◎**Having been ill for two weeks,** she felt rather weak. ◎**Not having got an answer,** I decided to write him another letter. ◎**Having been shown around the Water Cube,** we were then taken to see the Bird’s Nest for the 2008 Olympic Games. ◎They left the restaurant, **having spent two hours over lunch.**
Compare these two sentences:

➢ **Eating a hearty breakfast**, we prepared for our long journey. [1]
➢ **Having eaten a hearty breakfast,** we prepared for our long journey. [2]

From [1], we understand that the eating and the preparation took place together, while from [2], we understand that the breakfast preceded the preparation.

[3] More examples: He ran out of the house **shouting.** ◎I stood **watching her,** not knowing what to do. ◎The boy came **running into the house.** ◎She was in the kitchen **preparing supper.** ◎The poor little girl still knelt there, **tears running down her cheeks.**

[4] More examples: **Unhappy with the result,** she returned to work. ◎**Long and untidy,** his hair played in the breeze. ◎**It being a holiday,** all the shops were shut. ◎**There being ice on the road,** I told the driver to slow down. ◎She looked at him expectantly, **her eyes full of excitement and curiosity.** ◎Mavis sat in the front seat, **her hands in her lap.** ◎**Considered works of art,** they were

			1.3.3.2 当 IC 的谓语动词块的第一部分是静态动词[①] **==>>**	通常 IC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，如： ➢ She denied any interest in politics and she claimed that she wished to continue in forensic medicine --> **Denying any interest in politics,** she claimed that she wished to continue in forensic medicine. ➢ **We explored the caves,** Peter acting as guide. ➢ **Feeling tired,** I went to bed[②]. ★ 但有一种特殊情形：如果两个 IC 的主语相同，且它们的谓语动词所表示的动作同时或相继发生，通常其中的一个 IC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，如： ➢ He opened the door and put down the key on the desk --> He opened the door, **putting down the key/Opening the door,** he put down the key on the desk. ➢ **Taking off our shoes,** we crept along the passage[③].

admitted into the country without customs duties. ◎**Too nervous to reply,** he stared at the floor. ◎**Of humble parentage,** he began his working life in a shoe factory. ◎**Being a student,** he was naturally interested in museums. ◎**Aroused by the crash,** he leapt to his feet. ◎The driver escaped **unhurt** from the accident. ◎**He being ill,** I attended the meeting instead of him last week. ◎**Convinced that they were trying to poison her,** she refused to eat anything. ◎**Weakened by successive storms,** the bridge was no longer safe. ◎She entered, **accompanied by her mother.** ◎He soon felt asleep, **exhausted by the journey.** ◎She gave him the overcoat, **anxious to be of service.** ◎**Frustrated,** he went back to his hometown. ◎He turned away **disappointed.** ◎**In February, at 3.5 per cent and 5.5 per cent respectively,** unemployment rates in Canada and the United States were at generational lows and worker shortages were everywhere. ◎They went to the teacher **in fear and trembling** to tell her that they'd broken a window.

① ★ But there is an exception: when the subject of the IC is the same as that of the other one and the event expressed by the IC is unexpected, we usually change the verb group of the IC to TO DO. For example:

➢ I arrived at the shop and I only found I'd left all my money at home --> I arrived at the shop **only to found I'd left all my money at home.**
➢ She went abroad **never to return.**

② More examples: **Not knowing her address,** we couldn't get in touch with her. ◎They sent us an open letter, **hoping to get our support.** ◎They went on with their struggle, **thinking theirs was a just cause.** ◎He never went out in daylight, **fearing that the police would recognize him.** ◎I got home, **feeling very tired.**

③ More examples: He seated himself at the desk and his mother began to tell him a story --> **He seating himself at the desk**, his mother began to tell him a story. ◎**Opening the drawer,** he took out a box. ◎**Taking a key out of his pocket,** he opened the door. ◎She went out, **slamming the door.** ◎He fired, **wounding one of the bandits.** ◎Mary walked round the town, **looking at the sights.** ◎It has since spread throughout the province, **infecting more than 100 people in three cities.** ◎**Seeing nobody at home,** she decided to leave them a note. ◎**Turning around,** she saw an ambulance driving up. ◎**Hearing the news,** they all jumped with joy. ◎**Arriving at the worksite,** he found them busy laying bricks. ◎**Returning home,** he began writing a melody for it. ◎A tree fell, **just missing his car.** ◎Pyongyang fired the first missiles on Wednesday, **sending two into waters off the east coast of the Korean Peninsula five minutes apart, at 12:38 p.m. and 12:43 p.m. local time (11:38 p.m. and 11:43 p.m. ET),** according to Japan's Coast Guard. ◎Seoul followed that test less than three hours later, **firing a new submarine-launched ballistic missile (SLBM) from the submerged 3,700-ton submarine ROKS Dosan Ahn Changho,** South Korea's Defense Ministry said. ◎They complained about the room, **the wife pointing out that they were promised a sea view.** ◎In Sri Lanka, 20 people have died in recent days, **most from drowning.**
Compare: **Calling early,** she found him at home. ◎**Called early,** he ate a quick breakfast. ◎**Having been called early,** he felt sleepy

2. 当 IC 的谓语动词块含有任意以下情态动词（且含有如括号里所示的意义）时： **should/ought to** (表义务), **should** (表意外惊讶)**==>>**	通常 IC 的谓语动词块采用 TO DO 的省略形式，如： ➢ He must have been blind, **not to see that** ➢ This is only a passing infatuation, **not to be taken too seriously.**

3. 练习

A. 尝试简化以下句子中的粗体所示的并列分句。

(1) **He was lost in thought** and he almost walked into the car in front of him.

(2) Lots of rescue workers were working around the clock **and they were sending supplies to Yushu, Qinghai Province after the earthquake.**

(3) The lawyer listened with full attention **and she was trying not to miss any point**.

(4) **We had been shown around the Water Cube** and we were then taken to see the Bird's Nest for the 2008 Olympic Games.

(5) The lady walked around the shops **and she kept an eye out for bargains.**

(6) The news shocked the public **and it led to great concern about students' safety at school.**

(7) **He had been told many times** and he finally understood it.

(8) **We had failed to reach them on the phone** and we sent an email instead.

(9) The children went home from the school **and their lessons were finished for the day.**

(10) He was busy writing a story **and he only stopped once in a while to smoke a cigarette.**

(11) **We were faced with so much trouble** and we failed to complete the task on time.

(12) **Lisa was attracted by the beauty of nature** and she decided to spend another two days on the farm.

(13) After his journey from abroad, Richard Jones returned home **and he was exhausted.**

B. 单选：选择最合适的答案。

(1) _______ in 1636, Harvard is one of the most famous universities in the United States.
A. Being founded B. It was founded C. Founded D. Founding

(2) _______ into use in April 2000, the hotline was meant for residents reporting water and heating supply breakdowns.
A. Put B. Putting C. Having put D. Being put

(3) More and more people are signing up for Yoga classes nowadays, _______ advantage of the health and relaxation benefits.
A. taking B. taken C. having taken D. having been taken

---

all day.
★ Having filled his glass/Filling his glass, Max took a long drink.
But when the first action is not short, we must use the perfect: *Having dug a hole in the road, the men just disappeared.* **NOT** Digging a hole in the road, the men just disappeared. More examples:
a. After he had left the building, the man hailed a taxi.
b. After leaving the building,...
c. After having left the building,...
d. Having left the building,...
e. Leaving the building,...
*Sentence (a) is the most neutral in style and the most usual of these patterns in everyday speech. (b) is also fairly usual, although a little more formal. (c) is less usual because after and having both repeat the idea of one action following the other. (d) and (e) are rather literary. (e) means that the two actions were very close in time.

(4) _______ in the mountains for a week, the two students were finally saved by the local police

A. Having lost B. Lost C. Being lost D. Losing

(5) Whenever he was asked why he was late for class, he would answer carelessly, always _______ the same thing.

A. saying B. said C. to say D. having said

(6) _______ for the breakdown of the school computer network, Alice was in low spirits.

A. Blaming B. Blamed C. To blame D. To be blamed

(7) Don't sit there _______ nothing. Come and help me with this table.

A. do B. to do C. doing D. and doing

(8) He hurried to the booking office only _______ that all the tickets had been sold out.

A. to tell B. to be told C. telling D. told

(9) We often provide our children with toys, footballs or basketballs, _______ that all children like these things.

A. thinking B. think C. to think D. thought

(10) Do you wake up every morning _______ energetic and ready to start a new day?

A. feel B. to feel C. feeling D. felt

(11) _______ around the fire, the tourists danced with the local people.

A. Gather B. To gather C. Gathering D. To be gathering

(12) _______ into English, the sentence was found to have an entirely different word order.

A. Translating B. Translated C. To translate D. Having translated

(13) When we visited my family home, memory came _______ back.

A. flooding B. to flood C. flood D. flooded

(14) _______ not to miss the flight at 15:20, the manager set out for the airport in a hurry.

A. Reminding B. Reminded C. To remind D. Having reminded

(15) _______ their hats into the air, the fans of the winning team let out loud shouts of victory.

A. To throw B. Thrown C. Throwing D. Being thrown

(16) _______ in the queue for half an hour, the old man suddenly realized he had left the cheque in the car.

A. Waiting B. To wait C. Having waited D. To have waited

(17) We had an anxious couple of weeks _______ for the results of the experiment.

A. wait B. to being waiting C. waited D. waiting

(18) Finding her car stolen, _______.

A. a policeman was asked to help B. the area was searching thoroughly

C. it was looked for everywhere D. she hurried to a policeman for help

(19) Faced with a bill for $ 10,000, _______.

A. John has taken an extra job B. the boss has given john an extra job

C. an extra job has been taken D. an extra job has been given to John

(20) _______ some officials, Napoleon inspected his army.

A. Followed B. Followed by C. Being followed D. Having been followed by

(21) _______ all the required books, he didn't answer the questions fluently in class.

A. Having not read B. Not having read C. Not read D. Not to read

(22) The soldier rushed into the cave, his right hand _______ a gun and his face _______ with sweat.

A. held; covered B. holding; covering C. holding; covered D. held; covering

(23) _______ Sunday, the students are at home.

A. Being B. To be C. It is D. It being

(24) The children are having a good time, _______ with sand, others with toys.

A. some of them playing B. some of them are playing

C. some of them D. who playing

(25) The villagers, _______ damaged by the flood, were given help by the International Red Cross.

A. all whose houses B. all their houses C. all of whose houses D. their all houses

(26) _______, I attended the meeting instead of him last week.

A. He was ill B. His being ill C. He being ill D. Him being ill

(27) All her time _______ experiments, she has no time for films.

A. devoted to do B. devoted to doing C. devoting to doing D. is devoted to doing

(28) _______ by the thought that she was suffering a heart attack, she screamed for help.

A. Terrifying B. Terrified C. Being terrified D. Having terrified

(29) A new technique _______, the production as a whole increased by 20 % percent last year.

A. employing B. having employed

C. to have been employed D. having been employed

(30) Terrible as the storm was, umbrellas tightly _______ in our hands, we continued our way.

A. to hold B. holding C. were held D. held

(31) At the age of 29, Dave was a worker, _______ in a small apartment near Boston and ___ what to do about his future.

A. living; wondering B. lived; wondering C. lived; wonder D. living; wondered

(32) Suddenly, a tall man driving a golden carriage _______ the girl and took her away, _______ into the woods.

A. seizing; disappeared B. seized; disappeared

C. seizing; disappearing D. seized; disappearing

(33) _______ in her finest skirt, the girl tried to make herself _______ at the party.

A. Dressing; noticing B. Dressed; noticing

C. Dressing; being noticed D. Dressed; noticed

(34) _______ the sound of the gun,many people came out, _______ to see what was the matter.

A. Heard, running B. Heard, run C. Hearing, run D. Hearing, running

(35) ______ full preparations, we decided to put off the party till next week.

A. We did not make B. Having not made C. We had not made D. Not having made

(36) At one point I made up my mind to talk to Uncle Sam. Then I changed my mind, _______that he could do nothing to help.

A. to realize B. realized C. realizing D. being realized

(37) Sit down, Emma. You will only make yourself more tired, _______ on your feet.

A. to keep B. keeping C. having kept D. to have kept

(38) The sunlight is white and blinding, ______ hard-edged shadows on the ground.

A. throwing B. being thrown C. to throw D. to be thrown

(39) When I was little, my mother used to sit by my bed, ______ me stories till I till asleep,

A. having told B. telling C.told D. to tell

(40) _______which university to attend, the girl asked her teacher for advice.

A. Not knowing B. Knowing not C. Not known D. Known not

第八章　名词性从句的简化

1.　名词性从句的简化

名词性从句中的重复信息大部分可以省略，如：

1)　I remember **that he objected to the scheme.** 我记得他曾经反对该计划。

-->I remember his objecting to the scheme①. *Sb does/did sth 是一个事件对象，一般来说有以下两种简化形式：

◆　**DOING 形式**（of sb doing sth）：介词 of 描述 doing（动作对象）与 sb（动作的发出者）之间的静态逻辑关系；

◆　**TO DO 形式**（for sb to do sth）：介词 for 描述 doing（动作对象）与 sb（动作的发出者）之间的静态逻辑关系。

在大多数情况下都采用 doing 的简化形式，但无论那一种形式中，其时间都依赖上下文②。

我们可以通过上下文（remember③），推测出 I remember his④objecting to the scheme⑤中 objecting 的时间过去。

2)　What upset the child was **that he was not allowed to visit his mother in the hospital.** 使这个小孩心烦伤心的是他被禁止去医院看望他的妈妈。

-->What upset the child was his not being allowed to visit his mother in the hospital.

3)　I hear **that he is singing.** 我听到他正在唱歌。

-->I hear him singing. *因为主句的谓语主动词 hear 为感观动词，按习惯，其后的名词性从句（宾语）需采用 to do 的省略形式：he is signing-->for him to be signing-->him singing。to be 没有实际意义省略，又考虑到整个名词性从句作宾语，所以 for 也省略。

4)　Do you **think that it is likely?** 你认为这事可能吗?

-->Do you think it likely? *因为主句的谓语主动词 think 为主观判断动词，按习惯，其后的名词性从句（宾语）需采用 to do 的省略形式：it is likely-->for it to be likely-->it likely。to be 没有实际意义省略，又考虑到整个名词性从句作宾语，所以 for 也省略。

5)　It's important **that the figures should be updated regularly.** 经常更新这些数值很重要。

-->It's important for the figures to be updated regularly. *句中名词性从句的谓语动词块含有情态动词 should⑥，需

---

① 简化后，功能词 that 也需要去掉。

② 当名词性从句的谓语动词块含有情态动词时，一般都采用 to do 的省略形式。

③ To have a picture or idea in your mind of people, events, places etc from the past.

④ ***His*** (=of him) is a fused word.

⑤ Usually, an event object can be expressed in two reduced forms, its time depending on the context:

1)　For sb/sth+TO DO (e.g. *I'd hate you to go.*) **For* is left out.

2)　Of sb/sth (possessive)+DOING (e.g. *I didn't like him/his taking all the credit; I dislike people asking me personal questions; I'm fed up with Sarah/Sarah's laughing at my accent.*)

⑥ Used to indicate obligation.

采用 to do 的省略形式：the figures should be updated regularly-->for the figures to be updated regularly。

6) **That she should have survived such an ordeal** was remarkable. 她居然能经得起这种磨难，真了不起。
-->For her to have survived such an ordeal was remarkable. *should 表意外惊讶。

7) It's useless **that we will continue.** 我们继续下去是徒劳的。
-->It's useless for us to continue. *句中名词性从句的谓语动词块的时间为将来，需采用 to do 省略形式：we will continue-->for us to continue。

8) It's very likely **that she'll ring me tonight.** 很可能今晚她给我打电话。
-->She is very likely to ring me tonight. *简化后，原句变成了 It's very likely for her to ring me tonight。但习惯上我们会进一步简化：将 for her to ring me tonight 放到原本主语的位置（此时 it 已没有意义，所以去掉），同时将 for 去掉，并将 her 变成主格 she[1]。

★英语中有部分简化特例，需要记忆。

9) The workers were proud **that their products were praised highly by the public.** 因产品受到公众的高度评价，工人们感到很自豪。
-->The workers were proud of their products being praised highly by the public. *采用 doing 的省略形式。 be proud of sth: feeling pleased about something that you have done or something that you own, or about someone or something you are involved with or related to.

★当动词不定式（to do）或 that 引导的名词性从句作介词的宾语时，介词在绝大多数情况下都要省略。上例原名中就省略了 of，简化后 of 再加上[2]。

10) He was very anxious **that Tom should take the examination.** 他渴望汤姆参加这次考试。
-->He was very anxious for Tom to take the examination. *采用 to do 的省略形式。be anxious for sth (如：anxious for their safety): strongly wishing sth. 在上例中，sth=for Tom to take the examination，第一个 for 省略[3]。

11) I insist **that you take immediate action to put this right.** 我坚决要求你立刻采取行动把事情处理好。
-->I insist on your taking immediate action to put this right. *Insist on sth: to demand that something should happen.

12) It is said **that he is the richest man in the world.** 据说他是这个世界上最富有的人。
--->He is said to be the richest man in the world. *因为主句的谓语主动词 say 为报道性动词，按习惯，其后的名词性从句（宾语）需采用 to do 的省略形式[4]：he is the richest man in the world--> for him to be the richest man in the

---

[1] Similar examples: *It is certain that he will agree/He is certain to agree; You're sure to fail if you do it that way.*

[2] Similar examples: *I'm glad to hear he's feeling better* (***About*** is left out); *I shudder to think of the problems ahead of us* (***At*** is left out); *I am sorry to have given you so much trouble.* (***For*** is left out)

[3] Similar example: *We are waiting for the rain to stop; There are telephones for drivers to call for help if they break down; For plants to grow properly, you have to water them regularly.*

[4] 主句谓语动词块的语态为被动。如用主动，这里的名词性从句就是宾语。

world。实际使用中，我们会进一步简化：将 for him...world 放到原本主语的位置（此时 it 已没有意义，所以也去掉），同时将 for 去掉，并将 him 变成主格 he[1]。

13) **That you remember my birthday** is really thoughtful. 你真体贴，记得我生日。

-->It is really thoughtful of you to remember my birthday/You are really thoughtful to remember my birthday. *如果一个名词性从句显示这个名词性从句的主语的某种个人品质，通常这个名词性从句采用 to do 的省略形式（for sb to do sth），且其中的 for 用 of 代替（即 of sb to do sth）。例句中，名词性从句 you remember my birthday 体现了其主语 you 的个人品质（即 thoughtful），所以采用了 TO DO 的省略形式，且 for 被 of 所代替[2]。

14) I don't know **what I should say.** 我不知道我该说什么。

-->I don't know what to say. *含有情态动词，采用了 to do 的省略形式[3]。

15) I don't know **how I can get to your house.** 我不知道怎么到你家。

-->I don't know how to get to your house.

16) Have you thought about **what you should send as a present?** 你想过应该送什么东西作为礼物吗？

->Have you thought about what to send as a present?

17) He told us **whether we would have a picnic** was still under discussion. 他告诉我们说是否去野炊还在讨论中。

-->He told us whether to have a picnic was still under discussion. *时间为过去将来，采用了 to do 的省略形式。

2. 名词性从句的简化规则

通过分析大量来自权威语料库的句子，作者总结出了名词性从句的简化规则，如下表所示：

1. 当陈述句作名词性从句时==>>	**1.1** 当 NC[4] 的谓语动词块不含情态动词时	**1.1.1** 当 NC 的谓语动词块的状态为一般**==>>**	**1.1.1.1** 当 NC 的谓语动词块的时间是将来或过去将来**==>>**	通常 NC 的谓语动词块采用 TO DO 的省略形式，如： ➢ It's useless that we will continue --> It's useless **for us to continue.** ➢ You would expect **there to be strong disagreement about this.** *There would be...[5]

---

[1] Similar example: *The storm is reported to have killed five people.*

[2] Similar examples: It was brave of you to speak in front of all those people. ◎You were right to do what you did. ◎I was wrong to speak to her about it. ◎You were foolish to act like that. ◎He was generous to give you so much money.
Compare these two sentences：
➢ It was nice of Tom to take the dog for a walk. (Nice expressing a personal quality: it was a kind action by Tom.)
➢ It was nice for Tom to take the dog for a walk.(It was a pleasant experience for Tom.)

[3] Similar example: I was worried about what to wear.

[4] NC is an acronym for noun clause.

[5] More examples: Dave arranged that someone would drive him home --> Dave arranged **for someone to drive him home.** ◎He know that with **him to help her**, she could and would succeed. ◎**For sales to increase**, we must lower our prices. ◎In Australia's New South Wales, a group of animals are at risk of losing their home with a new logging program **soon to start.**

	==>>		**1.1.1.2** 当 NC 的谓语动词块的时间是过去或现在==>>	通常 NC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，如： ➢ Do you remember that the students and teachers protested against the new rule? --> Do you remember **the students and teachers protesting against the new rule?** *因为名词性从句的主语较长，所以没有采用所有格形式[1]. ➢ **My forgetting her name** was embarrassing[2]. 但当这个 NC 作感观动词(如：see)/使动词(如：cause 和 make)/主观判断动词 (如：think)/报道性动词(如：report 和 say)的宾语时，通常 NC 的谓语动词块采用 TO DO 的省略形式，如： ➢ I saw that he left a few minutes ago --> I saw **him leave a few minutes ago.** *To 省略。 ➢ Her jokes made that us all laughed --> Her jokes **made us all laugh.** *To 省略[3]。
		1.1.2 当 NC 的谓语动词块的状态为进行==>>	通常不简化[4]。 但当这个 NC 作感观动词/使动词/主观判断动词/报道性动词的宾语时，通常 NC 的谓语动词块采用 TO DO 的省略形式，如： ➢ I saw that she was running away from the scene of the crime --> I saw **her running away from the scene of the crime.** *To be 省略。 ➢ The allied forces were reported **to be pushing towards Berlin**[5].	
		1.1.3 当 NC 的谓语动词块的状态为完成或完成进行==>>	**1.1.3.1** 当 NC 的谓语动词块的时间是将来或过去将来==>>	通常 NC 的谓语动词块采用 TO DO 的省略形式，如： ➢ I expect that I will have read this book by next Tuesday --> I expect **to have read this book by next**

---

[1] After the DOING reduction, the item realizing the subject of the NC may be in the genitive case or otherwise in the objective case (for pronouns having a distinctive objective case) or common case (for all other noun phrases). In general, the genitive is preferred if the item is a pronoun, the noun phrase has personal reference, and the style is formal.

[2] More examples: I object to **anyone smoking in here.** ◎Would you mind **my asking you a few questions?** ◎Excuse **my opening your letter by mistake.** ◎I'm not surprised at **your misunderstanding me.** ◎The biggest obstacle facing Tom was **his being in the big leagues for roughly two months and playing just 53 games.** ◎What would my mother think of **my being arrested?** ◎With **the children at school**, we can't take our vacations when we want to. ◎The murderer was brought in, with **his hands tied behind his back.** ◎With **Australia making a deal with the United States and the United Kingdom to begin a nuclear-powered submarine program,** we can expect the Aussie subs will look a lot like the latest versions in the US and British arsenals. ◎The story is about **several boys hunting for treasure in the mountains.** ◎He sat with **his arms clasped round his knees.** ◎All afternoon he worked with **the door locked.** ◎That year ended with **nothing settled.** ◎We rely on **our neighbors watering the plants** while we're away. ◎I dislike **people asking me personal questions.** ◎Many people are against **new drugs being tested on animals.**

[3] More examples: We like that our students take part in college sports activities --> We like **our students to take part in college sports activities.** ◎We consider **this (to be) very important.** ◎I've recently had **my appendix removed.** ◎He watched **the bed carried out of the door.** ◎She didn't want **her daughter taken out after dark.** ◎At 4:30 p.m. the chairman declared **the session closed.** ◎Keep **your mouth shut and your eyes open.**

[4] There is an exception: When an NC functions as the object of ***with***, we usually change the verb group of the NC to DOING. For example:

➢ With **the temple being repaired,** we can't visited it.
➢ We jumped into the water with **bullets whizzing past our ears.** ****Being*** is left out.
➢ With **the audience turning restive,**the chairman curtailed his long introduction.
➢ With **the financial crisis spreading across the globe,** a lot of companies have shut down and many people have been out of work.
➢ I was carried out on a stretcher, with **everyone gawping at me.**

[5] More examples: They were thought **to be hiding in the woods.** ◎He is supposed **to be washing the car.** ◎She is believed **to be living in Tokyo.** ◎We saw **them being threatened by the gang .**

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="3"></td><td rowspan="2"></td><td rowspan="2"></td><td></td><td>Tuesday.</td></tr>
<tr><td>1.1.3.2 当 NC 的谓语动词块的时间是过去或现在==>></td><td>通常 NC 的谓语动词块采用 DOING 的省略形式，如：
➢ I regret that he ever has raised the matter--> I regret his ever having raised the matter.
➢ Jane's not having received proper training was to her disadvantage[1].
但当这个 NC 作感观动词/使动词/主观判断动词/报道性动词的宾语时，通常 NC 的谓语动词块采用 TO DO 的省略形式，如：
➢ I believe it to have been a mistake.
➢ He was known to have worked for the French[2].</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">1.2 当 NC 的谓语动词块含有任意以下情态动词（且含有如括号里所示的意义）时：
can/could (表能力),
must (表义务),
should/ought to (表义务),
will/would(表意愿或习惯),
should (表意外惊讶)==></td><td>通常 NC 的谓语动词块采用 TO DO 的省略形式，如：
➢ It's important that the figures should be updated regularly --> It's important for the figures to be updated regularly.
➢ We think it strange that he should say a thing like that --> We think it strange for him to say a thing like that[3].</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">2. 当疑问句作名词性从句时，如果 NC 的谓语动词块含有任意以下情态动词（且含有如括号里所示的意义）时：
can/could (表能力),
must (表义务),
should/ought to (表义务),
will/would(表意愿或习惯)==></td><td>通常 NC 的谓语动词块采用 TO DO 的省略形式，如：
➢ I don't know what I should say-->I don't know what to say.
➢ The problem was how to contact everyone.
➢ I'm not sure (about) what to do.
➢ He didn't tell us whether to wait for him or go on without him[4].</td></tr>
</table>

3. 练习

A. 尝试简化以下句子中的名词性从句。

(1) It's customary **that the women should sit apart.**

(2) It is important **that students (should) attend all the lectures.**

(3) Is it necessary **that we should meet?**

(4) We advised **that they should start early.**

(5) It's unusual **that he should refuse a drink.**

---

① More examples: Excuse **me not having come earlier.** ◎we know nothing about **Henry Adams having served in the army.** ◎Dr. Henry Foster, withdrew his name from consideration after conservative Republicans objected to **his having performed abortions.**

② More examples: He is said **to have won another gold medal.** ◎She is said **to have been doing this work for twenty years.** ◎He is believed **to have been working hard.**

③ More examples: He was ashamed **for his son to ask such a simple question.** *Indicating surprise. ◎Computer technology makes it possible that many people can work from home --> Computer technology makes it possible **for many people to work from home.**

④ More examples: You must learn **when to give advice and when to be silent.** ◎He explained **how to use the parachute.** ◎Ask him **where to go.** ◎I don't know **who to ask advice from.** ◎I must think **what to do.** ◎He was wondering **whether to follow her or to go upstairs.** ◎He forgot **which way to go.** ◎I discovered **how to start the machine.**

(6) It seems inappropriate **that we will intervene at this stage.**

(7) It'll take a long time **that she will recover from the illness.**

(8) They believed **that he was insane.**

(9) I believe **that it has been a mistake.**

B. 单选：选择最合适的答案。

(1) The discovery of new evidence led to _______.

A. the thief having caught B. catch the thief

C. the thief being caught D. the thief to be caught

(2) Victor apologized for _______ to inform me of the change in the plan.

A. his being not able B. him not to be able C. his not being able D. him to be not able

(3) Robert is said _______ abroad, but I don't know what country he studied in.

A. to have studied B. to study C. to be studying D. to have been studying

(4) I still remember _______ to the Famen Temple and what I saw there.

A. to take B. to be taken C. taking D. being taken

(5) I hear they've promoted Tom, but he didn't mention _______ when we talked on the phone.

A. to promote B. having been promoted C. having promoted D. to be promoted

(6) When passing me he pretended _______ me.

A. to see B. not having seen C. to have not seen D. not to have seen

(7) A: We really appreciate _______ us.

B: My pleasure.

A. you help B. help C. your helping D. to help

(8) Please excuse my _______ in without _______.

A. come; permitted B. coming; permitted

C. coming; being permitted D. to come; being permitted

(9) She was glad to see her child well _______ care of.

A. take B. to be taken C. taken D. taking

(10) How about the two of us _______ a walk down the garden?

A. to take B. take C. taking D. to be taken

(11) What's troubling them is _______ enough experienced workers.

A. that they have to B. they have not C. their not having D. not their having

(12) Sometimes new ideas have to be tested many times before _______.

A. accepting fully B. being fully accepted C. fully accepting D. fully to be accepted

(13) The murderer was brought in, with his hands _______ behind his back.

A. to be tied B. being tied C. tied D. having tie

(14) He looked around and caught a man _______ his hand into the pocket of a passenger.

A. put B. to be putting C. to put D. putting

(15) She never dreamed of _______ a chance for her to meet her old friends again.

A. there was B. there being C. there to be D. being

(16) _______ the illegal mobile WAP sites worries many parents.

A. The children's surfing B. The children surf

C. The children surfing D. The children have surfed

(17) He is said _______ a book on the history of Chinese stone bridge, but I don't know if he has finished it.

A. to have written B. to be writing C. having writing D. writing

(18) The bank is reported in the local newspaper _______ in broad daylight yesterday.

A. being robbed B. to be robbed C. robbed D. having been robbed

(19) It is no use _______ me not to worry.

A. you tell B. your telling C. for you to have told D. having told

(20) Even the best writers sometimes find themselves _______ for words.

A. lose B. lost C. to lose D. having lost

第九章　运用面向对象英语语法分析句子

本章将运用前面章节中所学的面向对象英语语法基本概念对大量具有代表性的例子进行分析，以帮助读者弄懂诸多语法现象的来龙去脉，从而避免死记硬背，同时让读者更好地理解和运用此语法体系，学会举一反三。

1.　例子分析

1)　The **tall** boy is a singer. 那个高个男孩是一名歌手。

MC: The boy is a singer.

RRC: tall={who (=boy[①]) is} tall.

2)　The pen **in the drawer** is blue. 抽屉里的笔是蓝色的。

MC: The pen is blue.

RRC: in the drawer={which (=pen) is} in the drawer.

3)　The **black** keyboard **on the desk** is ugly. 桌上的黑色键盘很难看。

MC: The keyboard is ugly.

RRC1: black={which (=keyboard) is} black.

RRC2: on the desk={which (=keyboard) is} on the desk.

4)　There is a **steep** roof over the stadium. 那个体育馆的顶很陡。

MC: A roof is over the stadium.

RRC: steep={which (=roof) is} steep.

★there 没有实际意义，起引人注意的作用，使人们意识到某种事物存在。

5)　I heard the ringing **of the phone**. 我听到了电话响。

MC: I heard the ringing.

RRC: of the phone={which (=ringing) was} of the phone. *介词 of 描述 ringing（动作对象）与 phone（动作的发出者）之间的静态逻辑关系。

6)　The **little** boy **cleaning the room** is from India. 正在打扫房间的小男孩来自印度。

MC: The boy is from India.

RRC1: little={who(=boy) is} little.

RRC2: cleaning the room={who (=boy) is} cleaning the room.

7)　The girl **wearing a red dress** was Mary. 穿红色裙子的女孩叫玛丽。

MC: The girl was Mary.

RRC1: wearing a red dress={who (=girl) } wore a red dress.

---

① *Boy* is the understood subject (logical subject) of the RRC. The understood subject of the reduced clause is usually the same as that of the main clause. For example:

➢ Walking across the field, we saw a plane fly past. **NOT* ***Walking across the field, a plane flew past.*** This suggests that the plane was walking across the field, which is nonsense.

It helps us understand a complex sentence to restore the reduced clauses in it.

RRC2: red={which (=dress) was} red.

8) The **killed** animal was a huge elephant. 被杀的动物是一头巨象。

MC: The animal was an elephant.

RRC1: killed={which (=animal) was} killed.

RRC2: huge={which (=elephant) was} huge.

9) The big tree **being cut** is leafless. 那棵正在被砍伐的大树光秃秃的。

MC: The tree is leafless.

RRC1: big={which (=tree) is} big.

RRC2: being cut={which (=tree) is} being cut.

10) Her boss, **James,** is a kind guy. 他的老板詹姆斯是一个善良的人。

MC: Her boss is a kind guy.

NRC: James={who (=her boss) is} James[1].

11) He has gone to Alice Springs, **a small town in the centre of Australia.** 他去了澳大利亚中部的小镇艾利斯斯普林斯。

MC: He has gone to Alice Springs.

NRC: a small town in the centre of Australia={which (=Alice Springs) is} a small town in the centre of Australia.

★理论上，英语中的任一复杂句都可以拆解为五种基本简单句。

12) Her wish **to earn one billion dollars** is impossible. 她想赚一百万美元的愿望是不可以实现的。

MC: Her wish is impossible.

RRC: to earn one billion dollars={which (=her wish) is} to earn one billion dollars[2].

13) I heard the news **that our team had won.** 我听到了我们队获胜的消息。

MC: I heard the news.

RRC: that our team had won={which (=the news) was} that our team had won.

14) I have much work **to do**. 我有很多工作要做。

MC: I have much work.

RRC1: to do=which (=work) I should do.

15) I have much work **for you to do**. 我有很多工作让你去做。

MC: I have much work.

RRC1: for you to do=which (=work) you should do.

16) The train **to arrive** is blue. 要到达的那辆列车是蓝色的。

MC: The train is blue.

---

[1] In *The novelist Joseph Conrad couldn't speak English until he was 4 7, Joseph Conrad* (=who was Joseph Conrad) is a reduced RRC. Note that there is no comma after *the novelist*.

[2] If you are a learner of traditional English grammar, you may think *to earn one billion dollars* is just an appositive and the analysis is complicating the issue. Actually, the analyses tell you the rules behind the various grammatical phenomena, helping you learn English somewhat like math by using these rules to avoid rote learning and a large number of grammatical concepts as much as possible.

RRC1: to arrive={which (=train) will} arrive.

17) I like the **silk** dress. 我喜欢这条丝质的裙子。

MC: I like the dress.

RRC1: silk={which (=dress) is of} silk. *介词 of 描述 dress（事物对象）与 silk（其构成材料对象）[1]之间的静态逻辑关系，且 of 省略。

18) I am swimming **in the pool**. 我在池子里游泳。

MC: I am swimming.

NRC: in the pool={who (=I) am} in the pool.

Or **NRC:** in the pool={which (=swimming) is } in the pool. *介词 in 描述 swimming（动作对象）与 pool（动作的发生地对象）之间的静态空间关系。

19) His brother sat **on the table.** 他的兄弟坐在桌子上。

MC: His brother sat.

NRC: on the table={who (=his brother) was} on the table.

Or **NRC:** on the table={which[2] (=sitting) was} on the table.

20) She cried **for two hours**. 她哭了两个小时。

MC: She cried.

NRC: for two hours={which (=crying) was} for two hours. *介词 for 描述 crying（动作对象）与 two hours（动作的持续时间对象）之间的静态逻辑关系。

21) He crawled **for 150 meters.** 他爬行了 150 米。

MC: He crawled.

NRC: for 150 meters={which (=crawling) was} for 150 meters. *介词 for 描述 crawling（动作对象）与 150 meters（动作的持续距离对象）之间的静态逻辑关系。

22) The cup was broken **by Peter**. 那个杯子被彼特打碎了。

MC: The cup was broken.

NRC: by Peter={which (=breaking) was} by Peter. *介词 by 描述 breaking（动作对象）与 Peter（动作的发出者对象）之间的静态逻辑关系。

23) He was walking **to the huge machine**. 他那时正在走向一台巨大的机器。

MC: He was walking.

NRC: to the huge machine={which (=walking) was} to the huge machine. *介词 to 描述 walking（动作对象）与 the huge machine（动作的方向对象）[3]之间的静态空间关系。

24) He suggested **taking the children to the zoo.** 他提议带孩子们去动物园。

---

[1] Similar examples: *a summer holiday (=a holiday in summer); a country cottage (=a cottage in the country); the oven door (=the door of the oven).*

[2] *Which* can refer to a part of a clause.

[3] Similar example: *We're going to France for our holidays this year*.
Let's look at another example: *We are going to buy a house.*
Be going to sth: Literally it means moving towards sth. If *sth* is an action object (to do sth), *be going to do sth* (The preposition *to* is left out.) is used in its figurative sense to express intention: *we are going to buy a house=we intend to buy a house.*

MC: He suggested taking the children to the zoo. *taking the children to the zoo 是一个动作对象[1]。

NRC: to the zoo={which (=taking) was} to the zoo.

25) **On the last day** I made a big decision. 在最后一天，我作出了一个重大的决定。

MC: I made a big decision.

NRC: on the last day ={which (=making) was} on the last day. *介词 on 描述 making（动作对象）与 the last day（动作的发生时间对象）之间的静态逻辑关系。

26) They had a wonderful holiday, **despite the bad weather.** 尽管天气不好，他们的假日还是过得极为愉快。

复合词 despite : not affected by sth[2]. 代入句中：They had a wonderful holiday, not affected by the bad weather.

MC: They had a wonderful holiday.

NRC: not affected by the bad weather={which (=that they had a wonderful holiday) was} not affected by the bad weather.

27) He cuts the carrots **with a knife.** 他用刀切胡萝卜。

MC: He cuts the carrots.

NRC: with a knife={which (=cutting) is }with a knife. *介词 with 描述 cutting（动作对象）与 a knife（执行动作时所使用的工具对象）之间的静态逻辑关系。

28) She hit him with a book **on the head.** 她用书打了他的头。

MC: She hit him.

NRC1: with a book={which (=hitting) was} with a book.

NRC2: on the head={which (=hitting) was} on the head.

29) You open the door **by pressing the button**. 按这个按钮就能打开门。

MC: You open the door

NRC: by pressing the button={which (=opening) is} by pressing the button. *by 描述 opening（动作对象）与 pressing the button（执行动作时所使用的动作方式对象）之间的静态逻辑关系。

30) The sun rose **above the horizon.** 太阳升了到地平线以上。

MC: The sun rose.

NRC: above the horizon={which (=that the sun rose) was} (with the result that it was) above the horizon. *习惯上 with the result that it was 省略。

也可以用另一种方式理解这个句子：

---

[1] As stated in the previous chapter, an action object can be expressed in two ways: TO DO (Infinitive with to) and DOING (-ing form), but some verbs can only take one form:

1. only take TO DO: refuse, plan, hope etc. Examples: *I absolutely refuse to take part in anything that's illegal; When do you plan to take your holiday? Joan's hoping to study law at Harvard.*

2. only take DOING: admit, avoid, deny etc. Examples: *He admitted having stolen the car*; *I just avoided running over the cat*; *He denied knowing anything about it.*

Some can take both forms with almost no difference in meaning (e.g. begin, like, bother etc). Examples: *I began teaching/to teach in 1984; I don't like talking/to talk in public; Many young people didn't bother voting/to vote*.

Some can take both forms with difference in meaning (e.g. remember, stop etc). Examples:

- Remember (ie Don't forget) to lock the door/I remember posting the letters, ie I have the memory of doing so in my mind.
- I stopped digging and looked at him.(If you stop doing something, you do not continue to do it.)/I stopped to tie my shoe. (to pause in an activity, journey etc in order to do something else before you continue)

[2] When unsure of the content of a fused word, you can always look it up in dictionaries.

IC1: The sun rose.

IC2: above the horizon={and[①]it was} above the horizon.

31) The hunter shot the tiger **dead.** 猎人枪杀了那只老虎。

MC: The hunter shot the tiger.

NRC: dead={which (=that the hunter shot the tiger) was} (with the result that it was) dead.

也可以用另一种方式理解这个句子：

IC1: The hunter shot the tiger.

IC2: dead={and it was} dead.

32) He pushed the door **open.** 他推开了门。

MC: He pushed the door.

NRC: open={which (=that he pushed the door) was} (with the result that it was) open.

也可以用另一种方式理解这个句子：

IC1: He pushed the door.

IC2: open={and it was} open[②].

33) I put the book **on the table.** 我把书放在桌子上。

MC: I put the book.

NRC: on the table={which (=that I put the book) was} (with the result that it was) on the table.

也可以用另一种方式理解这个句子：

IC1: I put the book.

IC2: on the table={and it was} on the table.

34) I'm glad **about your passing the test.** 你考及格了，我很高兴。

MC: I'm glad.

NRC: about your passing the test={which (=that I am glad is } about your passing the test.

*我们先看一个例子：I found an English garden all **about** me {=I found that an English garden was all about me}。介词 about 描述 garden（事物对象）与 me（人物对象）之间的静态空间关系，指出前者环绕后者，这是 about 的原始意义。

在 I'm glad about your passing the test 这个句子中，使用了 about 的引申意义[③]，这个介词描述了 that I am glad（事件对象）与 your passing the test（事件对象）之间的静态逻辑关系，指出前者是结果后者是原因。

35) She is sharpening the knife **to cut the meat**. 她正在磨刀用来切肉。

MC: She is sharpening the knife.

NRC: to cut the meat={which (=that she is sharpening the knife) is for} to cut the meat. *介词 for 描述 that she is sharpening the knife（事件对象）与 to cut the meat（动作对象）之间的静态逻辑关系，指出后者是前者的目的[④]。不定式作 for 的宾语，for 省略。

---

① Used to indicate result. Examples:*I pulled the trigger and the gun went off*; *I missed supper and I'm starving*; *She fell downstairs and broke her leg.*

② Similar examples: *He pulled his belt tight; He writes his letters large; We painted the walls bright yellow; He blushed scarlet; The door banged shut.*

③ Learning the original sense of a word helps you understand its extended senses. Let's look at another example: *We're about to start=we will start soon.* * be about sth: sth=to start.

④ If the purpose object is in the front of a sentence, it is usually separated by a comma. Example: *To get a good seat, you need to arrive early.*

36) I am glad **to see you.** 很高兴见到你。

MC: I am glad.

NRC: to see you={which (=that I am glad) is about} to see you. *about 省略[1]。

37) She stood by the window **reading a thick book.** 她站在窗户旁读着一本厚厚的书。

IC1: She stood by the window.

IC2: reading a thick book=She was reading a thick book.

38) The teacher entered the classroom, **followed by two students**. 老师进了教室，后面跟着两个学生。

IC1: The teacher entered the room.

IC2: followed by two students=She/He[2] was followed by two students.

39) He is **very** tall. 他非常高。

MC: He is tall.

NRC: very [in a high degree]={which (=being tall) is} in a high degree. *复合词 very：in a high degree。Being tall 是一个状态对象。

40) She walked **slowly**. 她走得很慢。

MC: She walked.

NRC: slowly [in a slow way]={which (=walking)} was in a slow way. *复合词 slowly：in a slow way。*介词 in 描述 walking（动作对象）与 a slow way（地点对象，引申为方式对象）之间的静态逻辑关系，指出前者循着后者进行，显然这里的 in 使用的是引申意义。介词的引申意义一般较为抽象，建议结合其原始意义，运用图像思维，帮助理解。

★绝大多数副词都是复合词，其复合内容常为：介词+名词[3]。

41) I bought a book **yesterday**. 我昨天买了一本书。

MC: I bought a book.

NRC: yesterday={which (=buying) was on} yesterday. *习惯上，常用时间名词前的介词常省略，此处省略了 on[4]。

42) They are **possibly** students. 他们有可能是学生。

复合词 possibly：which is possible。代入句中：They are students, which is possible.

MC: They are students.

NRC: which(=that they are students) is possible.

---

[1] More examples：

- They were proud to belong/that they belonged to such a fine team. **Of* is left out.
- She's not slow to tell us what she thinks. **In/about* is left out.

[2] Obviously *classroom* isn't the logical subject of IC2.

[3] More examples：

- She cried loudly.
- Michelle smiled happily.

[4] Examples: *I will come tomorrow*; *Are you doing anything tonight?* ****On*** is omitted in both sentences.

Habitual omission is very common in English. Examples:

- You are (under an obligation) to report to the police=You must/should report to the police.
- Audrey and Jimmy are (on the way to) to be married in June=Audrey and Jimmy are going to be married in June. **On the way to* is used in its figurative sense to express an arrangement.
- I'd love to go swimming. **For* is left out.

43) **Tired,** she slept on the long soft sofa. 她累了，在长软沙发上睡着了。
IC1: Tired=She was tired.
IC2: she slept on the long soft sofa.

44) The village is very isolated, **there being no bus service.** 这座村庄很偏远，连公交车都没有。
IC1: The village is very isolated.
IC2: there being no bus service=(and) there is no bus service.

45) I didn't expect **there to be such a big crowd.** 我没想到会有这么多人。
*there to be such a big crowd=there would be such a big crowd.

46) She sat on the floor, **very worried.** 她坐在地板上，非常担心。
IC1: She sat on the floor.
IC2: very worried=she was very worried.

47) **Last week** I went to the theatre. 上星期，我去了剧院。
MC: I went.
NRC1: to the theatre={which (=going) was} to the theatre.
NRC2: last week={which (=going) was} (on) last week.

48) The lamp is **one meter** above the floor. 灯离地板一米高。
IC1: The lamp is above the floor.
IC2: one meter=(the distance between the lamp and the floor is) one meter. ＊从上下文 above，我们推测出 the distance between the lamp and the floor。

49) We arrived **after you left.** 在你走后，我们到了。
MC: We arrived.
NRC: after you left={which (=that we arrived) was} after (that) you left. *介词 after 描述 we arrived（事件对象）与 you left（事件对象）之间的静态时间关系。
Or NRC: after you left={which (=arriving) was} after (that) you left.

50) **When he saw her,** he waved. 他一看见她就摆了摆手。
*复合词 when：at the time at which。代入句中：At the time at which he saw her, he waved.
MC: he waved.
NRC: At the time at which he saw her={which (=waving) was} at the time at which he saw her.

51) Stay **where you are.** 呆在你现在的位置。
*复合词 where：at/in the place at/in which。代入句中：Stay at/in the place at/in which you are.
MC: Stay.
NRC: at/in the place at/in which you are ={which (=staying) is} at/in the place at/in which you are.

52) We'll stay at home **if it rains.** 如果下雨的话，我们就呆在家里。
*复合词 if：on the condition that。代入句中：We'll stay at home on the condition that it rains.

MC: We'll stay at home.
NRC: on the condition that it rains={which (=that we'll stay at home) is} on the condition that it rains.
RC: that it rains={which (=the condition) is} that it rains.

53) I don't like the car **because it is too big.** 我不喜欢那辆车，因为它太大了。
*复合词 because：for the reason that。代入句中：I don't like the car for the reason that it is too big.
MC: I don't like the car.
NRC: for the reason that it is too big={which (=that I don't like the car) is} for the reason that it is too big. *介词 for 描述 I don't like the car（事件对象）与 the reason（原因对象）之间的静态逻辑关系。
RC: the reason={which (=the reason) is} that it is too big.

54) He was late **due to the very heavy traffic.** 因为严重的交通拥堵，他迟到了。
*due to (=for) 是一个习语[①]，看作一个整体用作介词，描述 he was late（事件对象）与 the very heavy traffic（事物对象）之间的静态逻辑关系，指出前者是结果后者是原因。

55) I got up early **so that I could catch the first bus.** 我起得早，以便赶第一趟巴士。
*复合词 so：for the purpose。代入句中：I got up early for the purpose that I could catch the first bus.
MC: I got up early.
NRC: for the purpose that I could catch the first bus ={which (=that I got up early) was} for the purpose that I could catch the first bus. *介词 for 描述 I got up early（事件对象）与 the purpose（目的对象）之间的静态逻辑关系。
RC: the purpose={which (=the purpose) was} that I could catch the first bus.

56) She was so angry **that she couldn't speak.** 她气得说不出话来。
MC: She was so angry.
NRC: that she couldn't speak={which (=that she was so angry) was} (with the result) that she couldn't speak. *with the result 省略。

57) **Though he was poor** he was happy. 虽然穷，但他很快乐。
*复合词 despite：despite the fact that. 代入句中：Despite the fact that he was poor he was happy.
MC: He was happy.
NRC: despite the fact that he was poor={which (=that he was happy) was} despite the fact that he was poor.

58) She is **as** tall **as her father (is tall).** 她跟她父亲一样高。
*第一个 as 是一个复合词：to the degree。第二个 as 也是一个复合词：to which。代入句中：She is tall to the degree to which her father (is tall).
MC: She is tall.
NRC: to the degree to which her father (is tall) ={which (=being tall) is to the degree} to which her father (is tall). *介词 to 描述 being tall（状态对象）与 the degree（地点对象）之间的静态空间关系，指出前者达到了后者的所在的位置。

59) Think **as I think.** 按照我的思考方式思考。

---

① Idiom: a phrase or sentence whose meaning is not clear from the meaning of its individual words and which must be learnt as a whole unit. Similar Examples: ***Owing to*** *a lack of funds, the project will not continue next year; He had to retire* ***because of*** *ill health.*

*复合词 as：in the way in which。代入句中：Think in the way in which I think.
MC: Think.
NRC: in the way in which I think={which (=thinking) is} in the way in which I think.

60) She was asleep **with her head on her arms.** 她枕着双手睡觉。
MC: She was asleep.
NRC: with her head on her arms={which (=that she was asleep) was} with (that her head was on her arms). *介词 with 描述 she was asleep（事件对象）与 her head was on her arms（事件对象）之间的静态空间及时间关系，指出两者同时同地存在。that her head was on her arms 被简化。

也可以用以下方式表达：
She was asleep, her head on her arms.
IC1: She was asleep.
IC2: her head on her arms=her head was on her arms.

61) We jumped into the water **with bullets whizzing past our ears.** 我们跳进水里，有子弹嗖嗖地从我们耳旁飞过。
MC: We jumped into the water.
NRC: with bullets whizzing past our ears={which (=that we jumped into the water) was} with that bullets were whizzing past our ears. * that bullets were whizzing past our ears 被简化。

62) **What** we need is food. 我们需要的是食物。
*复合词 what：the thing that。代入句中：The thing that we need is food.
MC: The thing is food.
RRC: that (=the thing) we need.

63) He was **aboard** the ship. 他在船上。
*复合词 aboard：on the board of (sth)。代入句中：He was on the board of the ship.
MC: He was on the board.
RRC: of the ship={which (=the board) was} of the ship. *介词 of 描述 the board（事物对象）与 the ship（事物对象）之间的静态逻辑关系，指出前者属于后者[①]。我们注意到 the board 是隐含的信息，其跟外部信息 the ship 发生了联系。

★学习理解一个单词的英文定义可以帮助我们发现其隐含的信息。隐含的信息和复合词是面向对象英语语法中两个极其重要的概念，掌握他们有助于理解有些看似非常让人困惑的语法现象[②]。

64) He accused me **of** cheating. 他指控我欺骗。
*accuse: to say that someone has done something morally wrong, illegal or unkind. Something 是隐含的信息。
MC: He accused me.
RRC: of cheating={which (=something) was} of cheating. *介词 of 描述 something（事物类型对象）与 cheating（动作对象）之间的静态逻辑关系，指出后者是前者的一个具体实例。

---

① *Be of* can be fused into one word *have.* Examples: Professor *Dawkins is of the same opinion as Dr Jones=...has...Jones*; *Her mother is of German ancestry*; *The museum is of great interest, both to experts and to casual visitors*.
② Let's look at an another example: *He appeared unhappy.*
Appear is a fused word: give the impression of being or doing sth. We substitute its content for it: He gave the impression of being unhappy.

★了解语法现象的来龙去脉可以帮助我们理解句子，避免死记硬背。

65) The trees give some welcome shade **from** the sun. 这些树遮住了阳光，很舒适凉快。
*shade: slight darkness caused by something blocking the direct light from something bright.
MC: The trees give some welcome shade.
RRC: from the sun={which (=the direct light) is} from the sun. *the direct light 是隐含的信息。介词 from 描述 the direct light（事物对象）与 the sun（事物对象）之间的静态空间关系，指出后者是前者的起源地。

66) The view **from** the mountain is amazing. 从山上看景色非常迷人。
*view: what can be seen from a particular place.
MC: The view is amazing.
NRC: from the mountain=which (=seeing) is from the mountain. *see 是隐含的信息。

67) They named their child **John.** 他们给他们的孩子取名为约翰。
*name: give a name to sb/sth. name 是隐含的信息。
RRC: John={which (=name) was} John.

★你可能觉得句中 name 的用法非常奇怪。我们将进一步学习，引进另一个非常重要的概念，帮助你理解这个词。首先来看一些例子：

- Sally is pouring/sprinkling water on the flowers. 莎莉正在浇花。
- She is putting oil onto the bicycle chain. 她在给自行车的链条上润滑油。
- They covered the yard with a roof. 他们在院子上方搭了一个棚。
- I used the Google search engine to obtain information about Everest on the World Wide Web. 我用谷歌在网上搜索关于珠穆朗玛峰的信息。
- Liz made her skirt smooth. 利兹将将她的裙子弄平整了。

在英语中当一个动作场景或状态场景比较普遍时，我们可以用一个和这个场景联系较为紧密的词（或创造一个新词）去描述这一场景，形成动词（即用一个词代替一个场景），我们称这种词为场景动词。场景动词可以使表达更加简洁、生动。

根据这一概念我们可以得到：

- Sally is watering the flowers. *to pour/sprinkle water on sth=to water. *因为浇水这一动作场景在生活中较为普遍，所以就用 water 这个和此场景联系较为紧密的词描述了这一场景，形成了动词，water 就是一个场景动词（此时 water 这个动词不仅包含浇这个动作也包含水这个名词）。
- She is oiling the bicycle chain. *to put oil on sth=to oil.
- The roofed the yard. *to cover sth with a roof=to roof.
- I googled Everest. *to use the Google...Web=to google.
- Liz smoothed her skirt smooth. *to make sth smooth=to smooth.

显然，例句中的 name 就是一个场景动词[①]。

68) I saw **him crying.** 我那时看到他正在哭。
I saw him crying=I saw (that) he was crying. *saw 是一个感观动词，句子采用了 to do 的省略形式[②]（was crying-->to be crying-->crying; to be 省略）。

[①] More examples: *We quickened our steps*; *I never sweeten my tea*; *Dogs treed the raccoon*; *I'll phone you this evening*; *Blood from the wound had caked on his face*.
[②] The passive form is *He was seen crying by me.*

69) I saw **him cry.** 我那时看到他哭了。
I saw him cry=I saw (that) he cried. *句子采用了 to do 的省略形式[1]（cried-->to cry-->cry; to 省略）。

70) He made **the girl laugh.** 他把那个女孩逗笑了。
He made the girl laugh=He made (that) the girl laughed. *make 的原始意义: to produce something, for example by putting the different parts of it together. 即使某一对象从无到有。这里运用了 make 的引申意义，即制造了 the girl laughed 这个抽象的事件对象。因主句的主动词 made 为使动词，因而 the girl laughed 采用了 to do 的省略形式[2]（laughed-->to laugh-->laugh; to 省略）。

71) His actions made **him respected.** 他的行为使他受人尊重。
His actions made him respected=His actions made (that) he was respected. *was respected-->to be respected-->respected。to be 省略。

72) The news made **her happy.** 那则消息使她高兴起来了。
The news made her happy=The news made (that) she was happy.

73) He makes **it a rule never to borrow money.** 无论如何也不向别人借钱是他给自己定了一项原则。
He makes it a rule never to borrow money=He makes (that) it is a rule never to borrow money. *to be 省略。

74) I'd hate **(for) him to think I wasn't interested.** 很遗憾他认为我不感兴趣。
*介词 for 描述 to think（动作对象）与 him（动作的发出者）之间的静态逻辑关系。因 for him to think I wasn't interested 整个作宾语，所以 for 也可以省略。

75) She wants **me to go with her.** 她想我跟她一起去。
She wants me to go with her=She wants that I will go with her. *因时间为将来，所以采用了 to do 的省略形式（for me to go-->me to go; 因整个作宾语，所以 for 省略）。

76) We would like **you to come and visit us.** 我们希望你来看看我们。
We would like you to come and visit us=We would like that you will come and visit us.

77) My boss allows **me to use the telephone.** 我的老板允许我使用那部电话。
My boss allows me to use the telephone=My boss allows that I can use the telephone. *因含有情态动词 can，所以采用了 to do 的省略形式。

78) I asked **James to buy some bread.** 我叫詹姆斯去买一些面包。
I asked James to buy some bread=I asked that James should buy some bread. *因含有情态动词 should，所以采用了 to do 的省略形式。

---

[1] The passive form is *Hes was seen to cry.*
[2] Similar words: *cause, get, have. Examples:*
The cold weather caused the plants to die. ****To*** is kept. ◎She soon got the children ready for school. ◎Do you think you'll get the work finished on time? ◎I couldn't get the car to start this morning. ◎He got his sister to help him with his homework. ◎I'll have the gardener plant some trees. ◎They're going to have their house painted.
NOTE:
- We had a window broken in the storm. ****Have*** means *experience*.
- Charles had his head cut off.

79) He is finding **this trip very exciting.** 他觉得这次的旅程非常令人兴奋。

He is finding this trip very exciting=He is finding that this trip is very exciting. *因主句的主动词 find 为主观判断动词，因而 this trip is very exciting 采用了 to do 的省略形式，且 to be 也省略。

80) I found **her in the classroom.** 我发现她在教室里。

I found her in the classroom=I found (that) she was in the classroom. *采用了 to do 的省略形式，且 to be 也省略。

81) I gave **her brother** a book. 我给了她兄弟一本书。

MC: I gave a book.

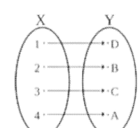
NRC: her brother={which (=giving) was to} her brother. *her brother 移到了宾语 a book 的前面，按习惯介词 to 也省略[1]。

82) The school awarded **Merry** a prize. 学校给梅丽颁发了一个奖状。

MC: The school awarded a prize.

NRC: Merry={which (=awarding) was to} Merry. *介词 to 省略。

83) I bought **her** a present. 我给她买了一个礼物。



MC: I bought a present.

NRC: her ={which (=present) was for} her. *如左图所示，介词 for/to 的原始意义指出两个对象之间一一对应的逻辑关系。例句中介词 for 描述 the present（事物对象）与 her（人物对象）之间的静态逻辑关系，指出两者一一对应，后者是受益者。调整语序后 for 省略。

84) It's too cold **to go in the sea.** 现在太冷，不能下海。

MC: It's too cold.

NRC: to go in the sea={which (=that it's too cold) is for} to go in the sea. *介词 for 描述 it's too cold（事件对象）与 to go in the sea（动作对象）之间的静态逻辑关系，指出两者一一对应[2]。

85) She made me some sandwiches. 她给我做了一些三明治。

MC: She made some sandwiches.

NRC: me={which (=sandwiches) were for} me.

86) He kept **silent.** 他保持沉默。

*keep: to stay in a particular state, condition, or position, or to make someone or something do this.

state 是隐含的信息：state of being (?). 例句中?是 silent：state of being silent。

87) The flowers smell **sweet.** 这些花闻起来很香。

*smell: to have a smell of the specified type.

---

① Either of these objects can be the subject of a passive sentence: *A book is given to her brother/Her brother is given a book.* More examples: *The chairman was handed a note; I've been offered a job; We were told all the details; The residents will be found new homes.*

In a sentence with give, send, buy etc, there is a choice of pattern between "give sb sth" and "give sth to sb". The choice depends on what information is new. The new information often goes at the end of the sentence. Example: *I am going to send this book to my sister.* (my sister is the new information)

When there is a pronoun, it usually comes before a noun phrase. Example: *We sent him a letter.*

When there are two pronouns after the verb, we normally use *to* or *for*. Example: *I didn't steal it! Maria gave it to me!*

② Similar examples: *The kitchen is too small for the whole family to eat in;There's too much work for you to finish today.*

smell 是隐含的信息：smell of being (?). 例句中?是 sweet：smell of being sweet.

88) The meat smells **of garlic.** 这肉闻起来有些大蒜的味道。
*smell 是隐含的信息：smell of (?). 例句中?是 garlic：smell of garlic。

89) She got fat. 她变胖了。
*get: to reach the specified state or condition
*state 是隐含的信息：state of being (?). 例句中?是 fat：state of being fat。

90) Can you **account for** your movements on that night? 你能解释一下你那晚的活动吗?
*复合词 account：to give a satisfactory explanation for sth。
RRC: for your movements on that night={which (=explanation) is} for your movements on that night. *for 指出一一对应的关系。

91) I **can** swim. 我会游泳。
*复合词 can：to have the ability to do something or to know how to do something.
ability 是隐含的信息：ability of (?). 例句中?是 to swim：ability to swim。to 省略。
★can 是特殊的复合词，也称为情态动词。英语中，所有的情态动词都是复合词，没有第三人称单数形式。

92) You **can't** park here. 不可以在这停车。
*复合词 can：to be allowed to do something or to have the right or power to do something.
something 是隐含的信息：something of (?). 例句中?是 to park here。to 省略。

93) All passengers **must** wear seat belts. 所以乘客必须系安全带。
*复合词 must：to have an obligation.
obligation 是隐含的信息：obligation of (?). 例句中?是 to wear seat belts。

94) France **fell behind** in coal production. 法国在煤炭生产方面落后了。
MC: France fell.
NRC1: behind={which (=France) was} behind (?). *?因没有必要提及或可以从上下文中推测出来而被省略了[①]。

95) The fire is **dying down.** 火正在慢慢熄灭。
MC: The fire is dying.
NRC: down [from a higher to a lower level] *down 是一个复合词[②]。

96) He lives **in retirement** in Cornwall. 他在康沃尔郡过退休生活。
MC: He lives.

---

① *France has fallen behind (Germany) in coal production.*
② There are many expressions involving prepositions that you need to learn as items of vocabulary/idiom. Figuring out the reasons behind them helps your memory. More examples:
- I gave most of my books away when I left college. *give away: to give something to someone because you do not want or need it for yourself.
- Key in your password and press "Enter". *key in: to put information into a computer or other machine, using buttons or a keyboard.
- We must put an end to their threats. *put a stop/an end to sth: to stop an activity that is harmful or unacceptable.
- Payments were made under the table to local officials. *under the table: money that is paid under the table is paid secretly and illegally.

NRC1: in retirement ={who (=he) is} in retirement. *介词 in 描述 he（人物对象）与 retirement[①]（状态对象）之间的静态空间关系。
NRC2: in Cornwall ={which (=living) is} in Cornwall.

97) She is five years **of age.** 她现在五岁。
MC: She is of age. *介词 of 描述 she（人物对象）与 age（事物对象）之间的静态逻辑关系，指出后者属于前者。
RRC: five years={which (=age) is} five years. *按习惯，five years 前移。

98) Volleyball is interesting **to watch.** 打排球看起来很有趣。
*例句的原有语序：To watch volleyball is interesting. 按习惯，如果一个句子形式是--To do (or do+preposition) sth[②]+be+adjective--为平衡句子，通常将 to do (or do+preposition)移至句尾巴。如：
To land on the moon is expensive-->The moon is expensive **to land on.** 登陆月球非常昂贵。
★英语的语序相对固定，但语序调整在英语中也非常普遍，这种调整有时候会造成理解上的困难，使我们看不到问题的本质，建议通过多练习学会还原语序，掌握语法现象的来龙去脉[③]。

99) He is certain **to agree.** 他一定会同意的。
*That he will agree is certain-->For him to agree is certain. 简化后，to agree 移至句尾，for 省略，him 变成主格。

100) Pat is **more** generous **than** I am. 帕特比我更慷慨。
*复合词 more：in a degree above the degree。复合词 than：in which。代入句中：Pat is generous in a degree above the degree in which I am (generous).
MC: Pat is generous.
NRC: in a degree above the degree in which I am (generous)={which (=being generous) is} in a degree above the degree in which I am (generous).

101) He is taller than you are. 他比你高。
*-er 相当于 more：in a degree above the degree。代入句中：He is tall in a degree above the degree in which you are (tall).
MC: He is tall.
NRC: in a degree above the degree in which you are (tall)={which (being tall) is} in a degree above the degree in which you are (tall).

102) I **will** give you a lift. 我将捎你一程。
*复合词 will（情态动词）：have the will to do sth。代入句中：I have the will to give your a lift.
MC: I have the will.
RRC: to give you a lift={which (=will) is} to give you a lift.

2. 练习

单选：选择最合适的答案。
(1) Finally, the thief handed everything ______ he had stolen to the police.

---

① Retirement=being retired.
② To do (or do+preposition) sth 整体作主语。
③ Similar examples: *She's interesting to talk to; He was amusing to be with; Rosa will be easy to deal with; She was hard to convince.*

A. which B. what C. whatever D. that

(2) After Mandela was free in 1990, he chose to shake hands with the people _______ wanted to kill him.

A. whose B. which C. / D. who

(3) They will fly to Washington, _______ they plan to stay for two or three days.

A. where B. there C. which D. when

(4) The man pulled out a gold watch, _______ were made of small diamonds.

A. the hands of whom B. whom the hands of C. which the hands of D. the hands of which

(5) All the neighbor admire this family， _______ the parents are treating their child like a friend.

A. why B. where C. which D. that

(6) He was educated at the local high school, _______ he went on to Beijing University.

A. after which B. after that C. in which D. in that

(7) It is reported that two schools, _______ are being built in my hometown， will open next year.

A. they both B. which both C. both of them D. both of which

(8) Those successful deaf dancers think that dancing is an activity _______ sight matters more than hearing.

A. when B. whose C. which D. where

(9) My uncle is quite worn out from years of hard work. He is no longer the man _______ he was fifteen years ago.

A. which B. whom C. who D. that

(10) Jimmy’s restaurant on Baker Street, _______ used to be poorly run, is now a successful business.

A. that B. which C. who D. where

(11) In the dark street, there wasn't a single person _______ she could turn for help.

A. to whom B. who C. from whom D. that

(12) Between the two parts of the concert is an interval, _______ the audience can buy ice-cream.

A. when B. where C. that D. which

(13) Susan may have missed her train, in ______ case she won’t arrive for another hour.

A. that B. what C. which D. whose

(14) I’ve never seen such an interesting film ______ we saw last night.

A. when B. as C. that D. which

(15) When we talk about the cities in United States, the first ______ comes into our mind is New York.

A. one B. city C. that D. which

(16) Many Chinese universities provide scholarships for students _______ financial aid.

A. in favour of B. in honour of C. in face of D. in need of

(17) Mr. Green stood up in defence of the 16-year-old boy, saying that he was not the one _______.

A. blamed B. blaming C. to blame D. to be blamed

(18) A: The last one _______ pays the meal.

B: Agreed!

A. arrived B. arrives C. to arrive D. arriving

(19) Can those _______ at the back of the classroom hear me?

A. seat B. sit C. seated D. sat

(20) Speaking of all the songs he has written, I think this is probably his _______ one.

A. better-known B. well-known C. best-known D. most-known

(21) In fact the Swede did not understand the three questions _______ were asked in French.

A. where B. who C. in which D. which

(22) Most of the people _______ to the party were famous scientists.

A. invited B. to invite C. being invited D. inviting

(23) There was a terrible noise _______ the sudden burst of light.

A. followed B. following C. to be followed D. being followed

(24) There are hundreds of visitors _______ in front of the Art Gallery to have a look at Van Gogh's paintings.

A. waited B. to wait C. waiting D. wait

(25) The movie originally _______ for children under 12 is now being used to educate adults

A. intended B. being intended

C. to be intended D. having been intended

(26) The girl _______ under the tree is my older sister.

A. sitting B. sits C. is sitting D. sat

(27) All books _______ to the library more than three days late will be subject to a fine.

A. return B. returning C. to return D. returned

(28) There are still many problems _______ before we are ready for a long stay on the Moon.

A. solving B. solved C. being solved D. to be solved

(29) The airport _______ next year will help promote tourism in this area.

A. being completed B. to be completed C. completed D. having been completed

(30) Sichuan food is hotter than Shanghainese food. That's _______.

A. what I like it B. what do I like it C. why I like it D. why do I like it

(31) The best moment for the football star was _______ he scored the winning goal.

A. where B. when C. how D. why

(32) _______ was most important to her, she told me, was her family.

A. It B. This C. What D. As

(33) When you read the book, you'd better make a mark _______ you have any questions.

A. at which B. at where C. the place where D. where

(34) Upon graduation he asked to be sent to _______.

A. where he is most needed B. where he needed

C. where he is mostly needed D. where is he mostly needed

(35) You can eat _______ you like.

A. whatever B. it C. that D. which

(36) _______ of you comes first will receive a prize.

A. Who B. One C. Whichever D. That

(37) The seaside here draws a lot of tourists every summer. Warm sunshine and soft sands make _______ it is.

A. what B. which C. how D. where

(38) From space, the earth looks blue. This is _______ about seventy-one percent of its surface is covered by water.

A. why B. how C. because D. whether

(39) _______ and happy, Tony stood up and accepted the prize.

A. Surprising B. Surprised C. Being surprised D. To be surprising

(40) Mike went to the library _______ some books yesterday.

A. borrow B. to borrow C. borrows D. borrowed

(41) _______ you use your dictionary often, your spelling will improve.

A. Whether B. If C. Though D. While

(42) He found it increasingly difficult to read, _______ his eyesight was beginning to fail.

A. though B. for C. but D. so

(43) Nancy enjoyed herself so much _______ she visited her friends in Sydney last year.

A. that B. which C. when D. where

(44) A: It's thirty years since we last met.

B: But I still remember the story, believe it or not, _______ we got lost on a rainy night.

A. which B. that C. what D. when

(45) Nobody believed his reason for being absent from the class _______ he had to meet his uncle at the airport.

A. why B. that C. where D. because

(46) Doris' success lies in the fact _______ she is co-operative and eager to learn from others.

A. which B. that C. when D. why

(47) The notice came around two in the afternoon _______ the meeting would be postponed.

A. when B. that C. whether D. how

(48) We should consider the students' request _______ the school library provide more books on popular science.

A. that B. when C. which D. where

(49) Birds' singing is sometimes a warning to other birds _______ away.

A. stayed B. staying C. to stay D. stay

(50) The order _______ the prisoner be set free arrived too late.

A. which B. whether C. that D. what

(51) He often asked me the question _______ the work was worth doing.

A. whether B. where C. that D. when

(52) To save class time, our teacher has _______ students do half of the exercise in class and complete the other half for homework.

A. us B. we C. our D. ours

(53) The workers want us _______ together with them.

A. work B. working C. to work D. worked

(54) She wants her paintings _______ in the gallery, but we don t think they would be very popular.

A. display B. to display C. displaying D. displayed

(55) He is very popular among his students as he always tries to make them _______ in his lectures.

A. interested B. interesting C. interest D. to interest

(56) Aunt Li often asks her son _______ too much meat. It's bad for his health.

A. don't eat B. not to eat C. not eat D. to not eat

(57) A: Excuse me sir, where is Room 301?

B: Just a minute. I'll have Bob _______ you to your room.

A. show B. shows C. to show D. showing

(58) A: Did Peter fix the computer himself?

B: He _______, because he doesn't know much about computers.

A. has it fixed B. had fixed it C. had it fixed D. fixed it

(59) The next morning she found the man _______ in bed, dead.

A. lying B. lie C. lay D. laying

(60) It was so cold that they kept the fire _______ all night.

A. to burn B. burn C. burning D. burned

(61) John was made _______ the truck for a week as a punishment.

A. to wash B. washing C. wash D. to be washing

(62) I will get my good friend Amy _______ you when you are in the USA.

A. to help B. help C. helping D. helped

(63) You shouldn't come in here leaving the customers _______ at the counter

A. wait B. to wait C. waiting D. waited

(64) A: What fruit is in season now?

B: Pears and apples, _______.

A. I know B. I think C. I see D. I feel

(65) A: How do you like the movie?

B: _______, it's not exciting enough, though lots of money has been spent on it.

A. To be general B. To speak highly of it C. To be honest D. To be worth it

(66) _______, the examination tomorrow has been canceled.

A. Believe it or not B. It depends C. It is up to you D. To make things worse

(67) He fell off his bike and hurt his back. _______, he will have to stay in hospital for a long time.

A. After all B. In any case C. As a result D. In this way

(68) If metal is heated and then cooled very quickly, _______, by dipping in cold water, it will be very hard but will break easily.

A. what's more B. in general C. for example D. on the other hand

(69) Correct the errors in his composition, _______.

A. if possible B. if any C. if ever D. if necessary

(70) The student did not catch the last bus, _______, it began to rain cats and dogs.

A. in the flesh B. at times C. what's worse D. back and forth

(71) She is lucky to have found a job she likes and _______, she can get there within 10 minutes.

A. in other words B. what's more C. as a result D. on the contrary

(72) _______, children under eight years old are still unable to take care of themselves.

A. To be frank B. As a result C. Generally speaking D. To tell you the truth

(73) It's natural that I didn't recognize her immediately I saw her. _______, it's almost 5 years since we met last.

A. After all B. In addition C. What's more D. In particular

(74) He doesn't have interest in cooking. _______, he's getting tired of it.

A. On the contrary B. On the one hand C. On the other hand D. On the whole

(75) _______ from the past performance, he is not likely to do very well in his exam.

A. Judging B. Judged C. To judge D. Having judged

(76) Your performance in the driving test didn't reach the required standard, _______, you failed.

A. in the end B. after all C. in other words D. at the same time

(77) _______with you，I have no money to spare.

A. To be frank B. What's more C. In addition D. However

(78) No sooner had he gone to bed than he fell _______.

A. sleeping B. sleep C. slept D. asleep

(79) These apples look _______.

A. nicely B. nice C. well D. sweetly

(80) Which do you think tastes _______, the chicken or the fish?

A. well B. good C. better D. best

(81) The story sounds _______.

A. to be true B. as true C. being true D. true

(82) In spring, all the flowers in the garden _______ sweet.

A. become B. taste C. smell D. sound

(83) His wish to become a driver has _______ true.

A. realized B. come C. grown D. turned

(84) When her mother came home yesterday, it was _______ dark.

A. running B. coming C. getting D. going

(85) The table _______ very smooth.

A. look B. turn C. feels D. smell

(86) _______ felt funny watching myself on TV.

A. One B. This C. It D. That

(87) They say that _______ a lot of water is good for you.

A. drink B. having drunk C. drinking D. drank

(88) _______ should not become a serious disadvantage in life and work.

A. To be not tall B. Not being tall C. Being not tall D. Not to be tall

(89) _______ matters most in learning English is enough practice.

A. What B. Why C. Where D. Which

(90) I can't stand _______ with Jane in the same office. She just refuses _______ talking while she works.

A. working; stopping B. to work; stopping

C. working; to stop D. to work; to stop

(91) The parents suggested _______ in the hotel room but their kids were anxious to camp out during the trip.

A. sleep B. to sleep C. sleeping D. having slept

(92) Tom has decided _______ an online shop after graduating from school.

A. open B. to open C. opened D. opening

(93) The young man made a _______ to his parents that he would try to earn his own living after graduation.

A. prediction B. promise C. plan D. contribution

(94) Choosing the right dictionary depends on _______ you want to use it for.

A. what B. why C. how D. whether

(95) Having checked the doors were closed, and _______ all the lights were off, the boy opened the door to his bedroom.

A. why B. that C. when D. where

(96) A: Robert is indeed a wise man.

B: Oh, yes. How often I have regretted _______ his advice!

A. to take B. taking C. not to take D. not taking

(97) Please remain _______; the winner of the prize will be announced soon.

A. seating B. seated C. to seat D. to be seated

(98) Tom sounds very much _______ in the job, but I'm not sure whether he can manage it.

A. interested B. interesting C. interestingly D. interestedly

(99) Ask her _______ come with me.

A. if she will B. if will she C. whether will she D. will she

(100) There isn't any difference between the two. I really don't know _______.

A. where to choose B. which to choose C. to choose what D. to choose which

(101) Although it's raining, _______ are still working in the fields.

A. they B. but they C. and they D. so they

(102) He doesn't know _______ to stay or not.

A. whether B. if C. either D. if he will

(103) Don't you remember _______?

A. seeing the man before B. to see the man before

C. saw the man before D. to have seen the man before

(104) Would you mind _______ your radio a little, please?

A. turn off B. turning off C. to turn down D. turning down

(105) People couldn't help _______ the foolish emperor in the procession.

A. laugh at B. to laugh at C. laughing at D. laughing on

(106) Can you tell me _______?

A. who is that gentleman B. that gentleman is who

C. who that gentleman is D. whom is that gentleman

(107) Tell him _______ the window.

A. to shut not B. not to shut C. to not shut D. not shut

(108) They have no idea at all _______.

A. where he has gone B. where did he go C. which place has he gone D. where has he gone

(109) Is _______ necessary to complete the design before National Day?

A. this B. that C. it D. he

(110) Last summer I took a course on _______.

A. how to make dresses B. how dresses be made

C. how to be made dresses D. how dresses to be made

(111) The library needs _______.

A. cleaning B. be cleaned C. clean D. being cleaned

(112) A: The light in the office is still on.

B: Oh, I forgot _______.

A. turning it off B. turn it off C. to turn it off D. having turned it off

(113) Go and get your coat. It's _______ you left it.

A. where B. there C. there where D. where there

(114) It's said that Singapore is really a beautiful country. And I'm considering _______ it.

A. to visit B. visiting C. to visiting D. being visited

(115) A: I'm sorry, but I didn't mean _______ out your secret.

B: But you know, letting out secret means _______ one's feelings.

A. to let; to hurt B. letting; hurting C. to let; hurting D. letting; to hurt

(116) The boy was lucky enough to have escaped _______ for being late for school.

A. being punished B. to be punished C. punishing D. to have been punished

(117) Look at the sign, Sir. We don't permit _______ in the hall.

A. smoke B. to smoke C. smoking D. to have a smoke

(118) I asked Jack _______ so much progress in English.

A. that he made B. when he makes C. if he makes D. how he made

(119) Can you tell me _______ the railway station?

A. how I can get to B. how can I get to C. where I can get to D. where can I get to

(120) It was along the Mississippi River _______ Mark Twain spent much of his childhood.

A. how B. which C. that D. where

(121) It was at the gate _______ he told me the news.

A. that B. what C. which D. when

(122) It _______ we had stayed together for a couple of weeks _______ I found we had a lot in common.

A. was until; when B. was until; that C. wasn't until; when D. wasn't until; that

(123) David said that it was because of his strong interest in literature _______ he chose the course.

A. that B. what C. why D. how

(124) It was in the small house _______ was built with stone by his father _______ he spent his childhood.

A. which, that B. that, which C. which, which D. that, where

(125) A: _______ you got to know I traveled to the USA?

B: Through one of your colleagues.

A. Where it was that B. When it was that C. How was it that D. Why was it that

(126) Where is it _______ you picked up the wallet yesterday?

A. that B. which C. the place D. /

(127) It was when I arrived home _______ I realized I had left my bag in the library.

A. what B. because C. that D. until

(128) It's not what we do once in a while _______ shapes our lives, but what we do consistently.

A. which B. that C. how D. when

(129) It was with the help of the local guide _______ the mountain climber was rescued.

A. who B. that C. when D. how

(130) It was some time later _______ I realized he had lied to me.

A. when B. that C. since D. before

(131) I really don't know _______ I had my money stolen.

A. when was it that B. that it was when C. where it was that D. it was where that

(132) It was Jackie Chan _______ made me interested in Chinese kung fu.

A. who B. which C. whom D. what

(133) It was _______ John _______ we won the game.

A. because; who B. because of; whom C. as; that D. thanks to; that

(134) What _______ makes him so upset?

A. is that B. is it C. is it that D. is that it

(135) It was so dark in the cinema that I could hardly _______ my friend.

A. turn out B. bring out C. call out D. pick out

(136) The neighbors are always willing to _______ a hand.

A. lend B. shake C. wave D. want

(137) Children these days _______ their parents too much. They should learn how to look after themselves.

A. get on B. keep on C. hold on D. depend on

(138) A: I'm sorry, sir. I can't finish the work on time.

B: Never mind. _______, the work is quite difficult.

A. At least B. For instance C. After all D. First of all

(139) A: If you _______ a new idea, please call me as soon as possible.

B: Sure, I will.

A. keep up with B. catch up with C. feed up with D. come up with

(140) I began to feel _______ in the new school when I saw some familiar faces

A. at home B. at heart C. at will D. at sight

(141) If a person has not had enough sleep, his actions will give him _______ during the day.

A. away B. up C. in D. back

(142) _______ a moment and I will go to your rescue.

A. Go on B. Hold on C. Move to D. Carry on

(143) The teacher stressed again that the students should not _______ any important details while retelling the story.

A. bring out B. let out C. leave out D. make out

(144) A: Why do you suggest we buy a new machine?

B: Because the old one has been damaged _______.

A. beyond reach B. beyond repair C. beyond control D. beyond description

(145) We firmly believe that war never settles anything. It only _______ violence.

A. runs into B. comes from C. leads to D. begins with

(146) The open-air celebration has been put off _______ the bad weather.

A. in case of B. in spite of C. instead of D. because of

(147) Hardly could he _______ this amount of work in such a short time.

A. get through B. get off C. get into D. get down

(148) Would you please _______ this form for me to see if I've filled it in right?

A. take off B. look after C. give up D. go over

(149) People usually think lions are _______ scary.

A. kinds of B. kind C. a kind of D. kind of

(150) The thieves ran away as soon as the alarm _______. 150

A. gave off B. put off C. showed off D. went off

(151) Is this your necklace, Mary? I _______ it when I was cleaning the bathroom this morning.

A. came across B. dealt with C. looked after D. went for

(152) Our teacher always speaks slowly and clearly in class _______.

A. so as to be understood B. to have understood

C. so as to understand D. to understand

(153) Cooper is _______ tired _______ do anything this morning.

A. so; that B. too; to C. both; and D. so; as

(154) In many people's opinion, that company, though relatively small, is pleasant _______.

A. to deal with B. dealing with C. to be dealt with D. dealt with

(155) I like getting up very early in summer. The morning air is so good ________.

A. to be breathed B. to breathe C. breathing D. being breathed

(156) There is no doubt ______ the couple did the right thing in coming back home earlier than planned.

A. whether B. that C. why D. when

(157) Nine is to three _______ three is to one.

A. when B. that C. which D. what

(158) With his work _______, he went home happily.

A. finishing B. to finish C. finished D. had finished

(159) Tom looked at Jenny, with tears _______ his eyes, and shouted out the words _______ in his heart for years.

A. filling; having hidden B. filled; hidden C. filling; hidden D. filled; hiding

(160) If you find Tom hard _______, you'd better keep away from him.

A. to get along with B. to get along C. to be got along with D. getting along with

(161) A volunteer is a person willing to help others, one who offers to do something without _______.

A. paying B. paid C. being paid D. to pay

(162) We need to take action instead of waiting here for problems _______.

A. to solve B. to be solved C. solved D. being solved

(163) With so much work _______ with, I doubt if I shall have time to visit you.

A. to deal B. dealing C. dealt D. having dealt

(164) The student completed this experiment to make come true _______ Professor Joseph had said.

A. that B. what C. when D. where

(165) Without his support, we wouldn't be ________ we are now.

A. how B. when C. where D. why

(166) The gold medal will be awarded to ________ wins the first place in the bicycle race.

A. whomever B. wherever C. whoever D. whatever

(167) By boat is the only way to get here, which is ________ we arrived.

A. where B. when C. why D. how

(168) The last time we had great fun was ________ we were visiting the Water Park.

A. where B. how C. when D. why

(169) ________ the project in time, the staff were working at weekends.

A. Competing B. Having completed C. To have completed D. To complete

(170) John's success has nothing to do with good luck. It is years of hard work ________ has made him what he is today.

A. why B. when C. which D. that 170

(171) Some insects ________ the color of their surroundings to protect themselves.

A. take in B. take off C. take on D. take out

(172) This machine is very easy ________. Anybody can learn to use it in a few minutes.

A. operating B. to be operating C. operated D. to operate

第十章　副词性从句

1.　副词性从句

副词性从句相当于副词，给句子增加时间、地点、原因、目的、结果、条件、让步、对比或方式信息。本质上，所有的副词性从句都是简化的非限制性关系从句。以下表格中是常见的副词性从句。

种类	常用引导词	示例
时间	when, whenever, as, while, before, after, until, till, since, ever since, once, as soon as, every time, the moment, instantly, directly	➢ It was raining **when we arrived.** 我们到的时候正在下雨。 ➢ **Whenever she comes,** she brings a friend. 她每次来都带个朋友. ➢ I watched her **as she combed her hair.** 她梳头的时候我一直看着她. ➢ **While Mary was writing a letter,** the children were playing outside. 玛丽写信时孩子都在外面玩儿. ➢ It may be many years **before we meet again.** 大概要过许多年我们才能再见。 ➢ The sun came out **after the storm ceased.** 在暴风雨停止后，太阳出来了。 ➢ **Until she spoke** I hadn't realized she was foreign. 她要不说话我还一直不知道她是外国人。 ➢ Don't leave **till I arrive.** 我不来你不要离开。 *till 多用于口语; until 通常用于句首。 ➢ What have you been doing **since I last saw you?** 自我上次和你见面以后，你在做什么？ ➢ I have lived here **ever since I was a child.** 我从是个孩子时就一直住在这儿。 ➢ **Once he arrives** we can start. 他一到我们就可以动身。 ➢ I'll tell him **as soon as I see him.** 我一见到他就告诉他。 ➢ **Every time he phones** I always seem to be in the bath. 他每次来电话时，我好像总是正在洗澡。 ➢ **The moment (= As soon as) I get the money** I'll send the ticket. 一收到钱就我就会把票寄给你。 ➢ Tell me **instantly he arrives.** 他一到就告诉我。 ➢ I went home **directly I had finished work.** 我一干完活就回家了。
地点	where , wherever	➢ He lives **where the climate is mild.** 他住在一个气候温暖的地方。 ➢ **Wherever she goes,** there are crowds of people waiting to see her. 她所到之处都有成群的人等着见她。
原因	as, because, for, since, seeing(that), now that	➢ I went to bed early, **as I was exhausted.** 我睡得早，因为我筋疲力尽了 ➢ John didn't attend the meeting **because he was ill.** 约翰没有出席会议，因为他病了。 ➢ We can't go **for it is raining.** 我们不能走，因为正在下雨。 *表原因时 for 不用于句首。 ➢ **Since we've no money** we can't buy a new car. 因为我们没钱，没法买新汽车。 ➢ **Seeing (that) the weather is bad,** we'll stay at home. 因为天气不好，我们要呆在家里了。 ➢ **Now that spring is here,** we can expect milder weather. 现在春天来了，我们可以期望较温和的天气
目的	that, so that, in order that, lest, for fear that, in case	➢ She worked hard **so that everything would be ready by 6 o'clock.** 她拼命干以便能到 6 点时把一切都准备好。 ➢ He has so organized his life **that his wife suspects nothing.** 他把生活安排得井井有条，为的是不让妻子有任何怀疑。

		➢ He left early **in order that he would arrive on time.** 他早早动身好按时到达。 ➢ He ran away **lest he should/might be seen.** 他怕人家看见他而跑开了。 ➢ We spoke in whispers **for fear (that) we might wake the baby.** 我们轻声谈话，以免吵醒婴儿。 ➢ It may rain--you'd better take an umbrella **(just) in case (it does).** 可能下雨--你最好带把伞，以防万一（下起来）.
结果	that, so ... that, such ... that	➢ She was **so** angry **(that) she couldn't speak.** 她气得说不出话来。 ➢ It was **such** a boring speech **(that) I fell asleep.** 这讲演枯燥无味，听得我都睡着了。
条件	if, unless, supposing, so/as long as, on condition(that), provided (that)	➢ **If you ask him,** he will help you. 如果你向他请求，他会帮助你。 ➢ You'll fail in French **unless you work harder.** 你要是不再加把劲儿，法语就考不及格了。 ➢ **Supposing (that) it rains,** can we play the match indoors? 要是下雨的话，我们在室内比赛行吗? ➢ **As/so long as it doesn't rain** we can play. 只要不下雨，我们就能玩。 ➢ You can go out **on condition that you wear an overcoat.** 你要穿上外衣才能出去。 ➢ **Provided we get good weather** it will be a successful holiday. 如果天气良好，我们的假日将过得非常好。
让步	though, although, no matter, even if, even though, however, whatever	➢ **Though it was raining,** he went there. 虽然当时正下着雨，他还是到那里去了。 ➢ **Although they are poor** they are happy. 虽然他们很穷，但很快乐。 ➢ Don't open the door, **no matter who comes.** 不管谁来都别开门. ➢ We'll go **even if it rains.** 即使下雨我们也要去。 ➢ **Even though it was raining,** she walked to work. 即使下雨，她也要走着去工作。 ➢ She leaves her bedroom window open, **however cold it is.** 无论天气多么冷，她都敞着卧室的窗户。 ➢ He will never succeed **however hard he tries.** 不论他怎样努力，都不会获得成功。 ➢ Keep calm, **whatever happens.** 不论出什么事都要保持镇静。
比较	than, as	➢ I know you better **than he (does)** 我比他更了解你。 ➢ She's a better player **than (she was) last year.** 她演得比去年好。 ➢ He can run **as** fast **as I can.** 他能跑得和我一样快。 ➢ She's **as** good an actress **as she is a singer.** 她当演员和当歌手都一样出色.
方式	as, as if, as though	➢ Do **as I say** and sit down. 照我说的，坐下。 ➢ She looked **as if/though she were made of ice.** 她看起来似乎是冰做的。

2. 副词性从句的简化

副词性从句中的重复信息大部分可以省略，如：

种类	示例
时间	➢ When visiting London I like to travel by bus=When I visit London I like to travel by us[①]. 我游览伦敦时喜欢坐公共汽车。

① For clearness, it is advised to keep the introduction word in the reduced form.
Looking out of the window, the mountains appeared very close. *This sentence is incorrect since this seems to say that the mountains were looking out of the window. This structure is usually avoided in careful writing because of the danger of misunderstanding.

	➢ Approaching the city center, we saw a stone statue of about 10 meters in height[1]=When we approached the city center, we saw a stone statue of about 10 meters in height. 当接近市中心时，我们看到了一座高约十米的石雕。 ➢ He fell asleep while doing his homework=He fell asleep while he was doing his homework. 他做着做着功课就睡着了。
让步	➢ No matter how frequently performed, the works of Beethoven still attract people all over the world=No matter how frequently they are performed, the works of Beethoven still attract people all over the world. 无论演奏地多频繁，贝多芬的作品在全世界仍能吸引人们。 ➢ Though surprised to see us, the professor gave us a warm welcome=Though she/he was surprised to see us, the professor gave us a warm welcome. 看到我们教授虽觉得惊讶，但还是热烈欢迎了我们。 ➢ Whether sick or well, she is always cheerful=Whether she is sick or well, she is always cheerful. 无论是生病还是健康，她总是高高兴兴的。
条件	➢ If necessary I will come at 6=If it is necessary I will come at 6[2]. 如有必要，我 6 点钟来。 ➢ Working hard, you will succeed=If you work hard, you will succeed. 如果努力工作，你就会成功。 ➢ The flowers will die unless watered every day=The flowers will die unless they are watered every day. 除非每天浇水，不然这些花就会凋谢。 ➢ Weather permitting, the match will be played on Wednesday=If weather permits, the match will be played on Wednesday. 如果天气允许，比赛将在星期三举行。
原因	➢ The last bus having gone, we had to walk home=Because the last bus had gone, we had to walk home. 最后一班车走了，我们不得不步行回家。*当然你也可以将这两个句子理解为由 and 连接的并列句分句。 ➢ Knowing English well, he translated the article without much difficulty=Since he knew English well, he translated the article without much difficulty. 由于精通英语，他翻译这篇文章毫不费力。*当然你也可以将这两个句子理解为由 and 连接的并列句分句。
方式	➢ The old man listened as though brooding=The old man listened as though he was brooding. 那位老人倾听着，似乎陷入了深思。 ➢ Jim hurriedly left the room as if angry=Jim hurriedly left the room as if he was angry. 吉姆匆忙离开了房间，好像生气了。

3. 练习

单选：选择最合适的答案。

(1) He didn't go to school yesterday _______ he was ill.
A. because B. because of C. if D. so

(2) _______ she is young, she knows quite a lot.
A. When B. However C. Although D. Unless

(3) I will keep calling Nancy _______ she answers.
A. when B. after C. but D. till

(4) The car is _______ expensive _______ he can't buy it.
A. too; to B. so; that C. such; that D. enough; that

(5) She was standing exactly _______ you are standing now.
A. before B. until C. unless D. where

(6) The teacher speaks very loudly _______ all the students can hear her.
A. so that B. because C. since D. when

(7) Father won't allow me to play outside _______ I wash up the dishes.

[1] The sentence below shows how the advantage of compactness must be balanced against the danger of ambiguity,for the absence of a subject leaves doubt as to which nearby nominal element is notionally the subject:
We met you (when you?/we? were) leaving the room. *This reduction is incorrect.

[2] If the first verb of an If-clause isn't be, we usually don't reduce it. For example: If you work hard, you will succeed.

A. if not B. if C. unless D. because

(8) The students hurried to the classroom _______ the bell rang.

A. until B. as soon as C. if D. so that

(9) I took my driving license with me on holiday, _______ I wanted to hire a car.

A. in case B. even if C. ever since D. if only

(10) A: Did Jack come back early last night？

B: Yes. It was not yet eight o'clock _______ he arrived home.

A. before B. when C. that D. until

(11) The young couple, who returned my lost wallet, left ______ I could ask for their names.

A. while B. before C. after D. since

(12) The roof leaks ______ it rains.

A. whatever B. whenever C. whoever D. however

(13) It's _______ a tiny kitchen _______ I don't have to do much to keep it clean.

A. so; that B. such; that C. so; because D. such; because

(14) Generally speaking, _______ according to the directions, the drug has no side effect.

A. when taking B. when taken C. when to take D. when to be taken

(15) When _______ different cultures, we often pay attention only to the differences without noticing the many similarities.

A. compared B. being compared C. comparing D. having compared

(16) The experiment shows that proper amounts of exercise, if _______ regularly, can improve our health.

A. being carried out B. carrying out C. carried out D. to carry out

(17) _______ from the top of the tower, the south foot of the mountain is a sea of trees.

A. Seen B. Seeing C. Having seen D. To see

(18) Michael's new house is like a huge palace, _______ with his old one.

A. comparing B. compares C. to compare D. compared

(19) The flowers his friend gave him will die unless _______ every day.

A. watered B. watering B. water D. to water

(20) _______ small, the company has about 1,000 buyers in over 30 countries.

A. As B. If C. Although D. Once

(21) Time, _______ correctly, is money in the bank.

A. to use B. used C. using D. use

(22) You must learn to consult your feelings and your reason _______ you reach any decision.

A. although B. before C. because D. unless

(23) She had just finished her homework _______ her mother asked her to practice playing the piano yesterday.

A. when B. while C. after D. since

(24) There's no way of knowing why one man makes an important discovery _______ another man, also intelligent, fails.

A. since B. if C. as D. while

(25) Every evening after dinner, if not _______ from work, I will spend some time walking my dog.

A. being tired B. tiring C. tired D. to be tired

(26) _______ the police thought he was the most likely one, since they had no exact proof about it, they could not arrest him.

A. Although B. As long as C. If only D. As soon as

(27) Mary made coffee _______ her guests were finishing their meal.

A. so that B. although C. while D. as if

(28) I have heard a lot of good things about you _______ I came back from abroad.

A. since B. until C. before D. when

(29) The little boy won't go to sleep _______ his mother tells him a story.

A. or B. unless C. but D. whether

(30) Jack wasn't saying anything, but the teacher smiled at him _______ he had done something very clever.

A. as if B. in case C. while D. though

(31) Frank insisted that he was not asleep _______ I had great difficulty in waking him up.

A. whether B. although C. for D. so

(32) He had his camera ready _______ he saw something that would make a good picture.

A. even if B. if only C. in case D. so that

(33) Film has a much shorter history, especially when _______ such art forms as music and painting.

A. having compared to B. comparing to

C. compare to D. compared to

(34) Hot ______the night air was, we slept deeply because we were so tired after the long journey.

A. although B. as C. while D. however

(35) All the photographs in this book, ______ stated otherwise, date from the 1950s.

A. unless B. until C. once D. if

(36) _______ I always felt I would pass the exam, I never thought I would get an A.

A. While B. Once C. If D. Until

(37) One's life has value _______ one brings value to the life of others.

A. so that B. no matter how C. as long as D. except that

(38) A number of high buildings have arisen _______ there was nothing a year ago but ruins.

A. when B. where C. before D. until

(39) Mark needs to learn Chinese _______ his company is opening a branch in Beijing.

A. unless B. until C. although D. since

第十一章　介词

1.　介词

介词是英语中最复杂的知识点之一，下面我们来看下几本权威著作对介词的定义：

著作	对介词的定义
牛津高阶英汉双解词典（第四版）	word or group of words (eg in, from, to, out of, on behalf of) used esp before a noun or pronoun to show place, position, time, method, etc 介词（包括复合介词，尤用于名词或代词前，表示处所、位置、时间、方法等，如 in、from、to、out of、on behalf of）
美国传统词典[双解]（第一版）	In some languages, a word placed before a substantive and indicating the relation of that substantive to a verb, an adjective, or another substantive, as English *at, by, in, to, from, and with*. 在一些语言中放在一实词前，用于表示这一实词与动词、形容词或另一实词的关系，如英语中的 at, by, in, to, from 和 with
朗文当代英语词典（第四版）	a word that is used before a noun, pronoun, or gerund to show place, time, direction etc. In the phrase 'the trees in the park', 'in' is a preposition 一种用于名词、代词或动名词前以表示地点、方向等。如在短语'the trees in the park', 'in'是一个介词。
剑桥高级学习词典（第二版）	in grammar, a word which is used before a noun, a noun phrase or a pronoun, connecting it to another word: 在语法中，一种用于名词、名词词组或代词之前的将自己同其它词连接起来的词。
麦克米兰英语词典（第一版）	a word that usually comes before a noun or a pronoun and shows its relation to another part of the sentence. In the sentences *I left it on the table* and *She came out of the house* the words *on* and *out of* are prepositions. 一种通常在名词或代词之前并表示其后的名词或代词与句子的其它部分关系的词。如在 I left it on the table 和 She came out of the house 这两个句子中，on 和 out of 就是介词。
薄冰高级英语语法（修订版）	介词（preposition）又叫做前置词，一般置于名词之前。它是一种虚词，一般不重读，在句中不单独作任何句子成分，只表示其后的名词或相当于名词的词语与其他句子成分的关系。

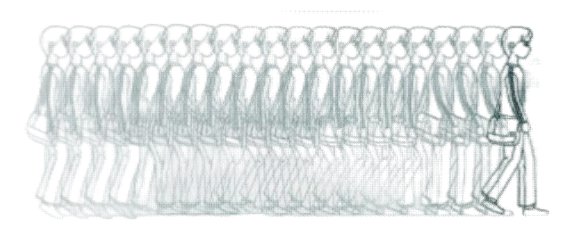
从上面的表格我们可以看到，介词的定义比较繁杂，甚至可以说有些模糊，未能触及到介词的本质。**在面向对象英语语法中，作者认为介词是用来描述两个事物（即对象）之间静态的关系的词（包含空间、时间和逻辑关系三种）。**

有人可能会问 across, through, along, up, down 等介词描述的却是动态关系。在解决这个疑问之前我们先来分析下面一个例子，学习 from 和 to 两个介词：

We walked from the cinema to the bus station. 我们从电影院往公交站走。

MC: We walked.

NRC1: to the bus station={which (=walking) was} to the bus station.



*介词 to 指出动作对象 walking 与其方向对象 the bus station 之间的静态空间关系。你可能对上述关系有疑问，walking 是动作，动态的对象怎么可能与 bus station 这个静态的对象有静态关系呢？如果你对动画（请看左图）有一些基本的了解就会知道，动画是由一系列静态的帧组成的，所以我们不难理解在一个特点的时间点（即特定的一帧），walking 与 the bus station 是一种静态的关系，即 walking 这个对象与 the bus station 这个对象是面对面的，通俗地讲就是介词 to 指出动作对象 walking 与其方向对象 the bus station 之间的静态空间关系。当然我们也可以将一系列 walking 对象看成一个静态的整体。两种理解方式都是正

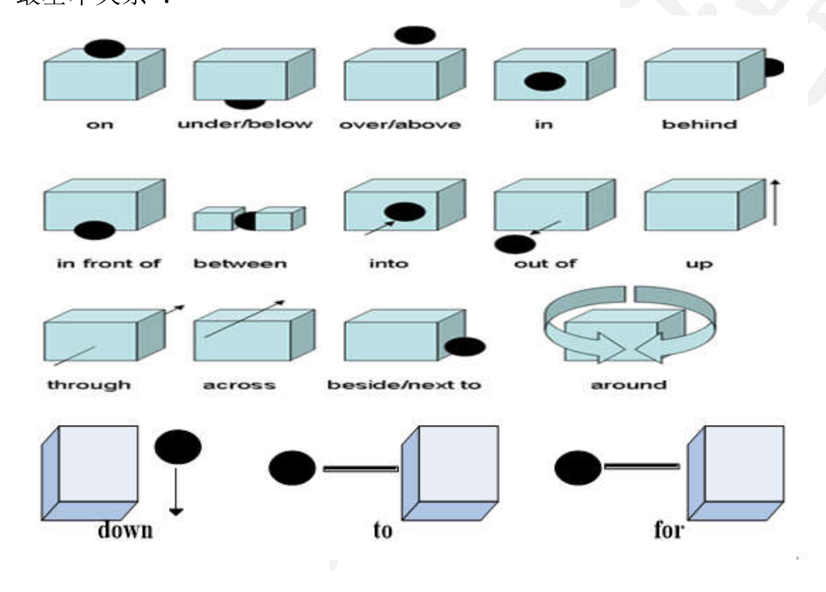
确的。

NRC2：from the cinema={which (=walking) was} from the cinema. 介词 from 指出动作对象 walking 与其起始点对象 the cinema 之间的静态空间关系。

现在我们再来解决上面的疑问，请看下面的表格：

介词	示例
across① [from one side to the other side of (sth)]	➢ I walked across the street. 我横穿这条街。*将 across 复合的内容代入得到：I walked from one side to the other side of the street.
through [from one end or side of (a channel, passage, etc) to the other]	➢ I drove through the tunnel. 我开车穿过隧道。*将 through 复合的内容代入得到：I drove from one end of the tunnel to the other.
along [from one end to or towards the other end of (sth)]	➢ I walked along the street. 我沿着街道走。*将 along 复合的内容代入得到：I walked from one end to the other end of the street.
up [from a lower to or toward a higher point on (sth)]	➢ I walked up the hill. 我往山上走。*将 up 复合的内容代入得到：I walked from a lower to a higher point on the hill.
down [from a high or higher point on (sth) to a lower one]	➢ I walked down the hill. 我往山下走。*将 down 复合的内容代入得到：I walked from a higher point on the hill to a lower one.

从上面的表格我们可以看到，across, through, up, down, into, out of 本质是复合词，可以看作是介词，表达的关系也是静态关系，其复合的内容都包含 from 和 to。下面我们用图示并结合例子的方法学习常用介词表达的最基本关系②：



➢ The computer is on the desk. 电脑在桌子上。
➢ The lamp is over the desk. 灯在桌子的正上方。
➢ The picture is above the desk. 画在桌子的上方。
➢ The book is under the desk. 书在桌子的正下方。
➢ The dog is below the desk. 狗在桌子的下面。
➢ The key is in the desk. 钥匙在桌子的抽屉里。
➢ The girl is behind the door. 女孩在门后面。
➢ They stood face to face. 他们面对面的站着。
➢ I sat with my back to the window. 我背对着窗户站着。
➢ Red is for danger. 红色代表危险。
➢ There is a sash around her waist. 她系着腰带。
➢ The desk is between the chair and the bookcase. 书桌在椅子和书柜之间。

① across, through, along, down 的英文解释引自《牛津高阶英汉双解词典》（第四版）的相关词条。up 的英文解释引自《美国传统词典[双解]》（第一版）的 up 词条。
② 介词表示的其它的关系一般由其基本关系引申而来。我们将 in front of 和 next to 分别当作整体，看成是两个介词。

2. 解读《美国传统词典[双解]》（第一版）中的常用介词

总的来说，英语中介词的意义有三个层次，即：

（a）指出两对象之间的静态关系（通常为两具体对象之间的空间位置关系）。我们称这种意义为基本意义；

（b）通过基本意义引出引申意义；

（c）充当复合词（当然也可以有引申意义）。

因而在学习介词时，掌握其基本意义，然后发挥想象进行引申是一项非常基本且重要的学习方法。下面我们将逐个解读《美国传统词典[双解]》（第一版）中的常用介词，以加深对介词本质的理解。

on

常见用法	示例
1) Used to indicate position above and supported by or in contact with: 在…上：用于表示在…上及被…支撑或与…接触的位置。	➢ The vase is on the table. 花瓶在桌子上。 ➢ We rested on our hands and knees. 我们把头靠在手和膝盖上休息。*NRC：which (=?) were on our hands and knees. 一般来说，which=our heads. ➢ a ring on one's finger 手指上的戒指
2) Used to indicate contact with or extent over (a surface) regardless of position: 在…上面：表示不考虑位置接触或在某一表面上。	➢ a picture on the wall 墙上挂着的一幅画 ➢ a rash on my back 我背上长的疹子 ➢ dirty marks on the ceiling 天花板上的污斑
3) Used to indicate location at or along: 表示位于或沿着：	➢ the pasture on the south side of the river 河岸南边的牧场 ➢ a house on the highway 高速公路边的房子
4) Used to indicate figurative or abstract position: 用以表示比喻的或抽象的位置。	➢ a lesson on philosophy 一堂哲学课 ➢ have sth on one's mind 有心事 ➢ He stopped on chapter two. 他读到了第二章。 ➢ on her third beer 在她喝第三杯啤酒时 ➢ On arriving home I discovered the burglary. 我一到家就发现家中被盗。 ➢ She was born on July 1st. 她在 7 月 1 日出生。
5) Used to indicate actual motion toward, against, or onto: 向…，朝…：用于表示实际的动作朝向，对着…或在…上。*此时为一个复合词。	➢ jumped on the table 跳到桌子上 *相当于是复合词 onto。 ➢ the march on Washington 向华盛顿的进军 *相当于 toward。

in

常见用法	示例
1) Within the limits, bounds, or area of: 在…里：在区间、界限或面积以内。	➢ a chair in the garden 花园里的一把椅子 ➢ the highest mountain in the world 世界上最高的山 ➢ was hit in the face 被打在脸上
2) Used to indicate figurative or abstract position: 用以表示比喻的或抽象的位置。	➢ born in the spring 在春天出生 ➢ It happened in the past. 这是过去发生的事情。 ➢ It will be ready in a week. 一周之后即准备妥当。 ➢ a woman in love 恋爱中的女人

	➢ They were in debt. 他们有债。
3) From the outside to a point within; into: 从外面进入；入内。＊此时为一个复合词。	➢ Threw the letter in the wastebasket. 把信扔进废纸篓。*相当于复合词 into。

under

常见用法	示例
1) In a lower position or place than: 在...下面：在比...低的位置或地方上	➢ a rug under a chair 椅子下面的小地毯 ➢ Let's shelter under the trees. 咱们在树下避一避吧。 ➢ a village under the hill 山脚下的村庄
2) Used to indicate figurative or abstract position: 用以表示比喻的或抽象的位置。	➢ If you are under 26 you can buy cheap rail tickets. 未满 26 岁者可购买廉价火车票。 ➢ They work under a kind leader. 他们在一个和蔼的领导手下工作。 ➢ The army is under the King's direct command. 军队由国王直接指挥。
3) To or into a lower position or place than: 到或进入比...低的位置或地方。	➢ rolled the ball under the couch 把球滚到躺椅下 ＊under [to or into a lower position or place than sth]。

below

常见用法	示例
1) In a lower position or place than: 在...下面：在比...低的位置或地方上	➢ There was an ugly scar below his left eye. 他左眼下有一道难看的疤。 ➢ The kitchen is directly below her bedroom. 厨房就在她的卧房下。 ➢ Please do not write below this line. 请不要写在这条线的下面。
2) Used to indicate figurative or abstract position: 用以表示比喻的或抽象的位置。	➢ The temperature remained below freezing all day. 温度整天都在冰点以下。 ➢ A sergeant in the police force is below an inspector. 警察中巡佐的职位低于巡官。

over

常见用法	示例
1) In or at a position above or higher than: 高于...：在...的上方或比...高。	➢ a sign over the door 门上方的标记 ➢ a hawk gliding over the hills 飞过山头的鹰
2) Upon the surface of: 在...表面。	➢ put a coat of varnish over the woodwork 在木制品上涂亮光漆 ➢ Spread a cloth over the table. 在桌子上铺上桌布。
3) Used to indicate figurative or abstract position: 用以表示比喻的或抽象的位置。	➢ records maintained over two years 保持了两年的记录 ➢ stayed over the holidays 一直呆到假期结束 ➢ He's over fifty. 他五十开外了。 ➢ There is no one over him in the department. 在这个部门没有人比他职位高。 ➢ a chat over coffee 喝着咖啡聊天
4) From one side of (sth) to the other: 从（某物）的一边到另一边。	➢ run over the grass 跑过草地 ➢ look over the hedge 隔着树篱看
5) Across the edge of and down:从...的	➢ fell over the cliff 跌落山崖

	边缘向下，越过…向下。	
6)	On the other side of: 在…对面：在…另一边，在…的对面。	➢ a village over the border 边界对面的村庄
7)	Through the extent of; all through: 在…的范围内；遍及。	➢ walked over the grounds 走遍整个庭园 ➢ looked over the report 看完整篇报告

above

常见用法		示例
1)	in a higher position than something else: 在…的上方	➢ The sun rose above the horizon. 太阳已升到地平线之上。 ➢ We were flying above the clouds. 我们在云层上面飞行。
2)	Used to indicate figurative or abstract position: 用以表示比喻的或抽象的位置。	➢ The temperature has been above the average recently. 近来的气温一直比平均温度高。 ➢ Applicants must be above/over the age of 18. 申请人年龄必须超过 18 岁。 ➢ A miser loves gold above his life. 一个守财奴爱财胜过生命。

behind

常见用法		示例
1)	At the back of or in the rear of: 在…之后：在后面或在…的后部。	➢ He sat behind her. 他坐在她后面。 ➢ The golf course is behind our house. 高尔夫球场在我们房屋的后面。
2)	Used to indicate figurative or abstract position: 用以表示比喻的或抽象的位置。	➢ He's behind the rest of the class in reading. 他在阅读方面不如班上的其他同学。 ➢ What's behind the smart suit and eager smile? 穿得这样漂亮、笑得这样甜，究竟是什么原因?

before

常见用法		示例
1)	in front of (sb/sth) ：(指位置)在(某人[某物]) 前面。	➢ He stood before her. 他站在她面前。 ➢ He was brought before the judge. 他被带到法官面前。
2)	Used to indicate figurative or abstract position: 用以表示比喻的或抽象的位置。	➢ B comes before C in the alphabet. B 在字母表里排在 C 之前。 ➢ Our troops recoiled before the attack. 我部队迫于敌人的进攻而后撤。

between

常见用法		示例
1)	in the space separating (two or more objects, etc): 介于(两者或多者)之间。	➢ Peter sat between Mary and Jane. 彼得坐在玛丽和简之间。 ➢ The wall between East and West Berlin came down in 1989. 在 1989 年东西柏林之间的墙拆除了。
2)	Used to indicate figurative or abstract position: 用以表示比喻的或抽象的位置。	➢ Between astonishment and joy, she couldn't help bursting into tears. 她惊喜交集，控制不住放声大哭起来。 ➢ He arrived between 6 and 7 last night. 他昨晚 6 点到 7 点之间到的。

among

常见用法	示例
1) In the midst of; surrounded by:在...当中，在...中间；被...所环绕。	➢ a pine tree among cedars 雪松中间的一棵松树 ➢ a village among hills 群山环抱的村庄
2) Used to indicate figurative or abstract position: 用以表示比喻的或抽象的位置。	➢ He was only one among many who needed help. 他只是众多需要帮助者之一。 ➢ She is among the wealthy. 她是个有钱人。

around

常见用法	示例
1) On all sides of: 在四周。	➢ trees around the field 那块地周围的树 ➢ He put his arms around her shoulders. 他搂抱着她的双肩。 ➢ The earth moves around the sun. 地球围绕着太阳运转。
2) Here and there within; throughout: 到处：在...内的各处；遍及。	➢ running around the playground 在运动场上到处跑 ➢ Chairs were left untidily around the room. 屋里到处乱放着椅子。
3) near: 在...附近	➢ She lives around Norfolk. 她住在诺福克附近。
4) Used to indicate figurative or abstract position: 用以表示比喻的或抽象的位置。	➢ It'll be finished around Christmas. 这事将在圣诞节前后完成。 ➢ There are around 80 pyramids in Egypt. 在埃及大约有 80 座金字塔。

beside

常见用法	示例
1) At the side of; next to. 在...旁边；挨着。	➢ Sit beside your sister. 坐在你妹妹旁边。 ➢ I keep a dictionary beside me when I'm doing crosswords. 我填纵横字谜的时候，手边总有一本字典。
2) Used to indicate figurative or abstract position: 用以表示比喻的或抽象的位置。	➢ His argument is beside the subject. 他的议论离开主题了。 ➢ Beside your earlier work this piece seems rather disappointing. 这件工作同你早先的工作相比，有些令人失望。 ➢ She has earned a place beside the best performers in the business. 她在商业中赢得与最佳者平等的地位。

by

常见用法	示例
1) near (sb/sth); at the side of; beside：靠近（某人[某物]）；在...旁边；在...附近。	➢ The telephone is by the window. 电话在窗户边上。 ➢ Come and sit by me. 来坐在我身旁。

2)	Used to indicate figurative or abstract position: 用以表示比喻的或抽象的位置。	➢ One by one they left. 他们一个接一个地离去了。 ➢ The children came in two by two. 孩子两个两个地进来.
3)	not later than (a time); before ：不迟于（某时）; 在...之前。	➢ Can you finish the work by five o'clock? 你能在五点钟以前做完这工作吗?
4)	used especially with a passive verb to say who or what does something or makes something happen：指出施动者。	➢ He was arrested by the police. 他被警方逮捕了。 ➢ a play (written) by Shakespeare 莎士比亚（写）的剧本 ➢ was killed by a bullet 被子弹击毙 ➢ sell eggs by the dozen, material by the yard, coal by the ton 卖蛋论打、卖布论码、卖煤论吨 ➢ The room measures fifteen feet by twenty feet. 这房间十五英尺宽二十英尺长。*(multiplied) by twenty feet. ➢ He is a solicitor by profession. 按职业来说，他是位律师。 ➢ I met her quite by chance. 我遇见她完全是偶然的。
5)	used to say what means or method someone uses to do something：指出做某事采取的方法。	➢ You switch the radio on by pressing this button. 按这个按钮就能开收音机。 ➢ He earns his living by writing. 他靠写作为生。 ➢ I shall contact you by letter. 我将写信和你联系。*注意这里省略了一些常识性的信息，即：(writing a) letter。 ➢ May I pay by cheque? 我可以用支票付款吗？*即：(writing a) cheque。 ➢ He entered by the back door. 他从后门进入。*即：(passing through) the back door。 ➢ They travelled to Chicago by train. 他们搭火车去的芝加哥。*即：(taking a) train。 ➢ take sb by the hand 抓住某人的手 *即：(holding) the hand。
6)	during：在（某段时间）内。	➢ She sleeps by day and works by night. 她白天睡觉，夜间工作。
7)	from one side to the other of (sth/sb)：经过（某处[某人]）。	➢ He walked by me without speaking. 他从我身边走过，没说一句话。
8)	to the extent of (sth) ：到（某事物）的程度。	➢ The bullet missed him by two inches. 那子弹差两英寸就打中他了。 ➢ The carpet is too short by three feet. 那地毯短了三英尺。
9)	According to: 按照，根据。	➢ play a game by the rules 按规则做游戏 ➢ By my watch it is two o'clock. 我的表现在是两点钟。

from

常见用法		示例
1)	used for stating the origin of sb/sth：说明某人或某物的源头	➢ I'm from China. 我来自中国。 ➢ a wind from the north 从北方刮来的风 ➢ Has the train from London arrived? 伦敦来的火车到了吗? ➢ a present from a friend 朋友送的礼物 ➢ Wine is made from grapes. 葡萄酒是用葡萄酿造的。*{which (=materials) are } from grapes。materials 是隐含的信息，根据 make 的英文解释我们可以得到这一信息。
2)	Used to indicate figurative or abstract position: 用以表示比喻的或抽象的位置。	➢ I walked home from the station。我从家走到车站。 ➢ We lived in Scotland from 1960 to 1973. 我们从 1960 年到 1973 年住在苏格兰。 ➢ He was blind from birth. 他从出生就失明了。 ➢ She felt sick from tiredness. 她因疲劳而感到不舒服。*{which (=that she felt sick) was }

	from tiredness. 她感觉不舒服的这个事件对象的源头是疲劳。 ➢ From her looks I'd say she was Swedish. 从她的相貌上看，我敢说她是瑞典人。 ➢ protect children from violence 保护儿童免遭暴力侵犯

of

常见用法	示例
1) Belonging or connected to: 属于的或与...相连。	➢ the wall of the garden 花园的围墙 ➢ the rights of man 人的权利 ➢ the miners of Wales 威尔士的矿工 ➢ the works of Shakespeare 莎士比亚的著作 ➢ a map (showing the main features) of Ireland 一幅爱尔兰的地图 *注意括号中的内容通常会省略，但也就给我们理解介词的本质带来了困难。像汉语一样，英语中也存在大量的省略形象。 ➢ It died (as a result) of fever. 它死于高烧。
2) used to say what something contains：包含。	➢ a cup of coffee 一杯咖啡 ➢ several packets of cigarettes 几包香烟 ➢ a kilo of butter 一公斤黄油 ➢ a herd of elephants 一群象
3) possessing; having: 占有的；拥有的。	➢ a child of strange appearance 外貌奇特的孩子 ➢ a man of ability 能干的人 ➢ a person of honor 有声望的人
4) used to state specifically which thing of the general type mentioned you are referring to：指类的具体内容。*即表示类与其具体实例之间的静态逻辑关系。	➢ the city of Dublin 都柏林市 ➢ the issue of housing 住房问题 ➢ at the age of 16 在 16 岁那年 ➢ This spade is made of iron. 这把铲子是用铁做的。 ➢ a dress (made) of silk 丝的连衣裙 ➢ I was robbed of my cash and cheque-book. 我的现金和支票簿被抢了。*rob：take sth from a person or place illegally。{which (=sth) was} of my cash and cheque-book.
5) introducing the object of the action expressed by the preceding：引入前一名词所示行为的客体。*即表示动宾关系。	➢ the forging of a banknote 伪造钞票 ➢ the telling of lies 说谎 ➢ the fear of the dark 怕黑 *fear=fearing。
6) introducing the subject of the action expressed by the preceding：引入前一名词所示行为的主体。*即表示动主关系。	➢ the arrival of the delegation 代表团的到来 *arrival=arriving ➢ the killing of innocent people 无辜群众被杀的事件

with

常见用法	示例
1) used to say that two or more people or things are together in the same	➢ I saw Jimmy in town with his girlfriend. 我在城里看到吉米和他女朋友在一起。 ➢ Put this bag with the others. 把这个包和其它的放在一起。

	place：在一起。	➢ Can I wear this tie with my blue shirt? 我穿蓝衬衫能系这条领带吗？ ➢ He's been with the department (=working in it) since 1982. 自 1982 年以来，他就在这个部门工作。 ➢ drift with the current 顺水飘浮
2)	Used to indicate figurative or abstract position：用以表示比喻的或抽象的位置。	➢ I'm with you all the way! 我始终和你的意见一致! ➢ She trembled with fear. 她吓得发抖。 ➢ I'll do it with pleasure. 我很高兴做这件事。 ➢ She sleeps with the light on. 她爱开着灯睡觉。 ➢ The shadows lengthened with the approach of sunset. 随着太阳下落，影子也逐渐伸长。 ➢ Is there something wrong with your phone? 你的电话有毛病吗？
3)	possessing; having：占有的；拥有的。	➢ the man with the scar 带伤疤的男子 ➢ a person with a knowledge of European markets 熟悉欧洲市场的人
4)	used when talking about an action or activity to say which other person, group, or country is involved：指出动作行为的其它参与者。	➢ He is discussing the plan with an expert. 他正同一位专家在讨论该计划。 ➢ play tennis with sb 同某人打网球 ➢ I had a row with Jane. 我跟简吵了一架。
5)	indicating the tool or material used：指出动作行为过程中使用的工具或材料。	➢ He hit the door with a hammer. 他用锤子砸门。 ➢ You can see it with a microscope.用显微镜就能看见。
6)	used to say which person or thing someone has a particular feeling or attitude towards：对某事物有某一感情或态度。	➢ careful with the glasses 当心这些玻璃杯 ➢ angry with my children 生我孩子的气 ➢ patient with your aunt 对你姑姑耐心些
7)	And; plus：和；加上。	➢ My books, with my brother's, make a sizable library. 我的书加上弟弟的能够组成一个不小的图书馆了。 ➢ We had turkey with all the trimmings. 我们有火鸡和所需的调料。
8)	Inclusive of; including：包括。	➢ comes to $29.95 with postage and handling. 包括邮资和手续费总共是 29.95 美元。

to

	常见用法	示例
1)	close enough to be touching (sb/sth); facing：接近得触到（某人[某物]）；紧靠着；面对着。	➢ We were standing face to face. 我们面对面站着。 ➢ I sat with my back to the window. 我前对窗户坐着。 ➢ The shed is to the side of the house. 小棚屋在房子的一边。 ➢ cars queuing bumper to bumper on the motorway 高速公路上首尾相接排成长队的汽车 ➢ dance cheek to cheek 脸贴脸跳舞
2)	Used to indicate figurative or abstract position：用以表示比喻的或抽象的位置。	➢ the key to the door 开这个门的钥匙 ➢ We won by six goals to three. 我们以六比三获胜。 ➢ There are 100 centimeters to the meter. 100 厘米是 1 米。 ➢ do 30 miles to the gallon 每加仑可行驶 30 英里

	➢ It feels like velvet to me. 我摸起来像天鹅绒。 ➢ I am walking to the office. 我正朝办公室走去。*非从：*which (=walking) is to the office. waling* 这个动作对象与 office 这个对象是正面相对的，即表示走向办公室。 ➢ The garden extends to the river bank. 这个花园直伸展到河岸。 ➢ Her dress reached down to her ankles. 她的连衣裙垂至脚踝。 ➢ He tore the letter to pieces. 他把那封信撕碎了。

for

常见用法	示例
1) Used to indicate one-to-one correspondence: 即表示一一对应的逻辑关系。	➢ repeated the conversation word for word 逐字逐句地重复谈话 ➢ Who's the MP for Bradford? 谁是代表布拉德福德的下院议员? ➢ There's one bad apple for every three good ones. 每四个苹果里就有一个坏的。 ➢ You get a coupon for every 3 gallons of petrol. 每买三加仑的汽油就可获得一张优惠券。 ➢ Shaking your head for "No" is not universal. 世界上并非所有的人都用摇头来表示"不"。 ➢ There were 50 applicants for the post. 有 50 人申请这个职位。 ➢ a letter for you 给你的信 ➢ a chair for visitors 来宾用的座椅 ➢ It's quite warm for January. 就一月份来说，天气相当暖和了。 ➢ paid ten dollars for a ticket 花十美元买了张票 ➢ It's a machine for slicing bread. 这是切面包片的机器。 ➢ Is this the train for Glasgow? 这是开往格拉斯哥的火车吗? ➢ The deputy manager ran the firm for him while he was ill. 在他生病期间，副经理代他主持公司事务。 ➢ go for a walk 去散步 *表示事件与目的之间的一一对应关系。 ➢ Would you please translate this letter for me? 你给我翻译这封信行吗? ➢ search for treasure 寻宝 ➢ Are you for or against the new road scheme? 你对修建新道路的计画是赞成还是反对? ➢ I'm going away for a few days. 我要离开几天。 ➢ He crawled on his hands and knees for 100 meters. 他爬行了 100 米。
2) used to introduce the logical subject of an infinitive：用于指出不定式的逻辑主语。	➢ It's useless for us to continue. 我们继续下去是徒劳的。 ➢ For her to have survived such an ordeal was remarkable. 她居然能经得起这种磨难，真了不起。 ➢ It's customary for the women to sit apart. 按习俗，妇女要分开坐。

3. 练习

单选：选择最合适的答案。

(1) There is a new bridge _______ the river in front of my house.

A. on B. over C. above D. near

(2) Ice is not often seen here in winter as the temperature normally stays _______ zero.

A. up B. down C. above D. below

(3) The desk is _______ the way. Please carry it to an empty room.

A. in B. on C. to D. by

(4) The river goes _______ the city and many people like to have a race to swim _______ it every summer.

A. through; across B. across; through C. through; through D. across; across

(5) Try on this red skirt; you will look great _______ it.

A. on B. by C. in D. for

(6) The bottle is full _______ water. Who has filled it _______ water?

A. of; with B. with; of C. with; with D. of; of

(7) Please read it and give the answer _______ the question.

A. at B. for C. in D. to

(8) Look _______ the girl. She looks _______ her sister.

A. at; at B. like; like C. after; like D. at; like

(9) You have to study _______ the Chinese test _______ Monday night.

A. at; on B. for; on C. on; for D. at; in

(10) I often watch TV _______ seven _______ Sunday evenings.

A. in; on B. at; on C. at; in D. in; at

(11) _______ New Year's Eve, we can watch fireworks and enjoy performances.

A. On B. In C. At D. With

(12) The story happened _______ the 19th century

A. in B. at C. on D. of

(13) All of us went to the park _______ Bob. He had to look after his sister.

A. besides B. with C. except D. around

(14) A: How do you study _______ a test?

B: I study _______ making flashcards

A. by; for B. for; for C. for; by D. by; by

(15) Four Chinese models were _______ the 14 people awarded prizes on Friday at the World Supermodel Competition.

A. among B. between C. along D. beside

(16) Every day I do my homework _______ two hours.

A. to B. in C. for D. on

(17) The boy standing _______ Tina is too tall, so she can't see the picture on the wall.

A. behind B. next to C. beside D. in front of

(18) A: When did you live in Beijing, Mary?

B: I lived there____ 2008 to 2013.

A. on B. from C. for D. of

(19) Please call Mary _______ 685-6034.

A. in B. for C. at D. **o**n

(20) Suzhou is famous _______ its beautiful gardens and this garden is know _______ one of the best.

A. for; for B. for; as C. as; for D. as; as

(21) In hot summer, we should pay attention to protecting ourselves _______ strong sunlight.

A. from B. for C. with D. to

(22) They arrived _______ London _______ a cold winter night.

A. at; in B. in; on C. at; on D. in; at

(23) Helen got up too late this morning, so she went to school _______ breakfast.

A. without B. through C. by D. for

(24) Mr. Lee arrived _______ Beijing _______ May 6th _______ about 12:00 .

A. in; on; at B. at; on; on C. for; in; at D. in; in; at

(25) A: Is the tie made _______ silk?

B: Yes, it's made _______ Italy.

A. from; in B. of; in C. from; of D. of; from

(26) I have got two tickets _______ tomorrow's evening show. Would you like to come with me?

A. in B. by C. from D. for

(27) They usually go shopping _______ their lunch break.

A. against B. among C. between D. during

(28) The moonlight is shining _______ the window. Everything in the room looks so nice.

A. over B. through C. across D. past

(29) I often get up at 6:00 _______ the morning and go to bed at 10:00 _______ night.

A. in; in B. at; in C. in; at D. in; on

(30) Can you provide us _______ some information _______ the computer?

A. for; for B. with; with C. with; about D. about; with

(31) The young woman was wanted _______ murder.

A. to B. about C. for D. with

(32) A: Do you live with your family here, Mr. Wang?

B: Yes. I live with my family _______ a flat _______ a quiet street.

A. in; at B. on; at C. in; on D. on; in

(33) A: Did your brother agree to sell his house?

B: Yes, he did, though it was _______ his own wishes.

A. for B. against C. without D. as

(34) You should be polite _______ the old.

A. to B. for C. of D. with

(35) I hope the train will arrive on time, but it's _______ my control.

A. within B. without C. under D. beyond

(36) Would you mind not picking the flowers in the garden? They are _______ everyone's enjoyment.

A. in B. at C. for D. to

(37) Nowadays some hospitals refer to patients _______ name, not case number.

A. of B. as C. by D. with

(38) I agree to his suggestion _______ the condition that he drops all charges.

A. by B. in C. on D. to

(39) It was a real race ______ time to get the project done. Luckily, we made it.

A. over B. by C. for D. against

(40) The dictionary is what I want, but I don't have enough money _______ me.

A. by B. for C. in D. with

(41) My father warned me _______ going to the West Coast because it was crowed with tourists.

A. by B. on C. for D. against

(42) Shirley, a real book lover, often brings home many books to read _______ the library.

A. in B. for C. by D. from

(43) Nick, it's good for you to read some books _______ China before you start your trip there.

A. in B. for C. of D. on

(44) I’m sorry I didn’t phone you, but I’ve been very busy _______ the past couple of weeks.

A. beyond B. with C. among D. over

(45) He was a good student and scored _______ average in most subjects.

A. below B. of C. on D. above

(46) Sometimes proper answers are not far to seek_____ food safety problem.

A. in B. to C. on D. after

(47) The Well Hotel stands in a quiet place _______ the main road at the far end of the lake.

A. to B. for C. off D. out

(48) An agreement seems to be impossible because the majority of the committee members are _______ it.

A. against B. for C. to D. with

(49) _______ all the animals I've ever had, these two dogs are the most sensitive to the spoken word.

A. From B. Of C. For D. With

(50) A serious study of physics is impossible _______ some knowledge of mathematics.

A. against B. before C. beyond D. without

(51) Before you pay a visit to a place of interest, look in your local library _______ a book about it.

A. on B. at C. for D. to

第十二章　名词

1.　普通名词的分类

名词根据其意义，可以分为专有名词和普通名词，而普通名词又可以分为以下四类：

分类	示例
（1）个体名词：表示单个的人或事物。	book（书）, desk（办公桌）, horse（马）, house（房子）, person（人）
（2）集体名词：表示一群人或一类事物。	army（军队）, family（家庭）, furniture（家具）, government（政府）, group（集团）, people（人们）
（3）物质名词：表示无法划分为个体的物质。	air（空气）, fire（火）, milk（牛奶）, steel（钢）, water（水）
（4）抽象名词：表示动作、状态、品质或其他抽象概念。	friendship（友情）, health（健康）, labor（劳动）, life （生活）, patience（耐力）

2.　名词的数

名词根据其可数性可分为可数名词和不可数名词：

分类		示例
（1）可数名词：指用来表示可以分为个体的且可直接用数目进行计数的事物的名词。 其前可加 a/an 或数词。个体名词和集体名词通常是可数名词。		bag, bed, book, bus, cup, country, desk, horse, house, person
（2）不可数名词：指用来表示不可以分为个体的且不可直接用数目进行计数的事物的名词（如：概念、状态、品质、感情或物质材料等）。 它没有复数形式，其前不可加 a/an 或数词。抽象名词和物质名词通常是不可数名词。		advice, cold, envy, love, material, sad, respect
常见的只修饰可数名词的词	few, a few, many	
常见的只修饰不可数名词的词	little, a little, much	
常见的两种都可以修饰的词	some, any, a lot of, lots of, plenty of	

3.　可数名词的数

可数名词有单数和复数两种形式[①]。指一个人或一件事物时，用单数形式[②]；指两个或多个人或事物时用复数形式。名词由单数形式变成复数形式的主要规则见下表：

主要规则	示例
（1）一般直接加 s。通常 s 在浊辅音或元音后读[z]，在	bird/birds, camel/camels, egg/eggs, flower/flowers

[①] 在通常情况下，专有名词具有“独一无二”的含义，因此通常没有复数形式。但是，专有名词的独一无二性通常是相对的，随着范围的扩大，这种独一无二性便会受到破坏。比如在一个小范围内，可能只有一个 Tom，但在一个较大的范围内则可能有多个 Tom，如：

- There are five Toms in our school. 我们学校有五个叫汤姆的人。

若专有名词转化成了普通名词，也可以有单复数形式，如：

- The painting my grandfather gave me turned out to be a Constable. 我祖父给我的那幅画原来是康斯塔伯的作品。
- Thousands of Lei Fengs have emerged in China. 中国涌现出了千千万万个雷锋。

[②] 单数可数名词一般不能单独使用，须与冠词或其它限定词连用。我们能说 I need a/the/his pen 而不能说 I need pen。

清辅音后读[s]。	
（2）以 s, x, z, ch, sh 结尾的名词，在词尾加 es，读作[iz]。	bus/buses, box/boxes, buzz/buzzes, watch/watches, dish/dishes
（3）以"辅音字母+y"结尾的名词，先将 y 改为 i 再加 es。ies 读作[iz]。	city/cities, body/bodies, factory/factories
（4）以 f 或 fe 结尾的名词，一般要将 f 或 fe 改为 v 再加 es，读作[vz]；但有些直接加 s,读作[z]；有些两者都可，需要记忆。	变化后加 es：half/ halves, leaf/leaves, knife/knives,wife/wives 直接加 s：chef/chefs, chief/chiefs, cliff/cliffs, roof/roofs, sheriff/sheriffs 两者都可：dwarf/dwarfs/dwarves, handkerchief/handkerchiefs/handkerchieves, hoof/hoofs/hooves, scarf/scarfs/scarves
（5）以 o 结尾的名词，通常加 s，读作[z]；有的加 es；有的两者都可，需要记忆。	加 es: tomato/tomatoes, potato/potatoes, hero/heroes 加 s: piano/pianos, radio/radios, photo/photos 两者都可：mosquito/mosquitoes /mosquitos, zero/zeroes/zeros, buffalo/buffaloes/buffalos
（6）有些名词的复数形式无规则可循，需要记记忆。	单复不同的：child/children, goose/geese, foot/feet, man/men, mouse/mice, ox/oxen, tooth/teeth, woman/women 单复同形的：sheep/sheep, fish/fish, deer/deer, Chinese/Chinese, Japanese/Japanese
（7）有些名词只有复数形式，一般这些名词表示的事物通常由两部分组成。	compasses, glasses, pants, pajamas, trousers, sandals
（8）合成名词和复数形式： a）多数按 s/es 的方法加； b）如果合成词由名词+介词/副词构成，通常将其主体词变成复数形式； c）man 或 woman 构成复合词通常只需要将他们变成 men/women，但当其作为修饰词时，man/woman 连同另外的主体词都要变成复数形式。	story-tellers, fire-engines, highways lookers-on, passers-by, sons-in-law chairwoman/chairwomen, fireman/firemen man teacher/men teachers, woman doctor/women doctors

4. 可数与不可数的相对性

在英语中，有些名词在不同的意义下，有时可数，有时不可数，简单来说我们需要按其表达的意思去确定单复数，如：

- Thank you for all your kind help. 谢谢你各方面的热心帮助。*help 表示帮助，是一个抽象名词，不可数。
- The helps haven't come this morning. 仆人们今早没有来。*这里的 help 表示仆人，是一个个体名词，可数。
- Failure is the mother of success. 失败是成功之母。*表成功，不可数。
- He was not a success as a governor. 就作州长而言，他不是一个成功者。*表示成功者，可数。

5. 名词的所有格

名词的格分为三种，即主格（用作主语和表语）、宾格（用作宾语）和所有格。名词的主格和宾格就是名词本身。名词的所有格相当于物主代词，表示所属关系，其构成规则见下表：

主要规则	示例
（1）表示人或其它有生命的事物的名词常在词尾加's，但要注意以下两种情况：	➢ his brother's car 他兄弟的车 ➢ her children's books 她的孩子们的书

a）如果名词为复数且以 s 结尾只需要加'； b）如果名词为单数但以 s 结尾此时可以加's 也可以只加'。 ★有些表示时间、距离、价格、世界、国家、城镇、集体或机构等无生命的名词，也可在词尾加's。 ★名词 1+'s+名词 2，如果名词 2 是一些常用的名词，通常还可以省略，表示某人的家或者某个店铺等。 ★两人或多人共有某物时，只需将最后一个名词变成所有格形式，即可以采用 A and B's 的形式。	➢ the cats' food 猫咪们的食物 ➢ Engles's house/Engles' house 恩格斯的房子 ➢ a three hours'journey 三小时的旅程 ➢ China's population 中国的人口 ➢ I'm going to the barber's (shop) to get my hair cut. 我要去理发店理发。 ➢ Tom and John's bedroom 汤姆和约翰合住的卧室
（2）无论表示有生命还是表示无生命名词，一般均可用 of+名词来表示所有关系。 ★"of+名词所有格/名词性物主代词"，称为双重所有格。	➢ the handle of the umbrella 伞的把 ➢ the lid of the box 箱子的盖 ➢ the role of the teacher 教师的职责 ➢ the rights of man 人的权利 ➢ a friend of my brother's 我兄弟的一位朋友。 ➢ a friend of mine 我的一位朋友

6. 练习

单选：选择最合适的答案。

(1) A: When is _______ Day?
B: It's on June 1st.
A. Child B. Children C. Child's D. Children's

(2) There is a nice picture in the little _______ bedroom. She likes it very much.
A. girl B. girls C. girl's D. girls'

(3) He is a student of _______.
A. Class First B. the Class One C. Class One D. First Class

(4) My brother told me he was soon going to visit _______.
A. the United State B. the United States C. United States D. United State

(5) Miss Smith is a friend of _______.
A. Mary's mother's B. Mary's mother C. Mother's of Mary D. Mary mother's

(6) The tables are made of _______.
A. wood B. woods C. wooden D. some woods

(7) _______ work has been done to improve the people's living standard.
A. Many B. A great many C. A large number of D. A great deal of

(8) As it was a stormy night, _______ people went to see the film.
A. a few B. few C. several D. many

(9) We always keep _______ spare paper, in case we ran out.
A. too much B. a number of C. plenty of D. a good many

(10) A: What would you like?
B: I'd like _______ orange juice, please.
A. a B. an C. two glass of D. a glass of

(11) Don't worry. There is _______ time left.
A. a little B. a few C. little D. few

(12) After playing football about half an hour, the students took _______ rest.

A. a little minute's B. a little minutes' C. a few minute's D. a few minutes'

(13) There are fifty _______ in our school. They are all friendly to us.

A. woman teachers B. women teacher

C. woman teacher D. women teachers

(14) The football under the bed is _______.

A. Lily and Lucy B. Lily's and Lucy's C. Lily's and Lucy D. Lily and Lucy's

(15) Rooms with _______ appear clean and bright.

A. few furnitures B. few furniture C. little furniture D. little furnitures

(16) _______ couldn't help stopping to listen to the blind performer's wonderful music and leaving him some _______.

A. Passer-bys; changes B. Passers-by; change

C. Passer-bys; change D. Passers-by; changes

(17) The concert last month was _______ that all the audience wanted to attend it once again.

A. so success B. such success C. so a success D. such a success

(18) It took us quite a long time to get here. It was _______ journey.

A. a three-hour B. a three hour C. three hour D. three hours

(19) Whenever we're in _______, we should never lose _______ but try to think of the way out.

A. the trouble; our hearts B. troubles; hearts

C. trouble; heart D. the trouble; the heart

(20) —Hello, Jack, where were you last night?

—_______. We were talking about the war on Iraq.

A. At the Roberts' B. To the Roberts C. To Roberts D. At the Roberts

(21) The _________ shoes were covered with mud, so I asked them to take them off before they got into ________ car.

A. girl's; Tom's B. girls'; Tom's' C. girls'; Tom's D. girl's; Toms'

第十三章　冠词

1.　冠词

1)　不定冠词的用法

a 用于辅音前（不是辅音字母）, an 用于元音（不是元音字母）前。不定冠词 a/an 与数词 one 同源，基本意义是一个，主要用在可数名词单数前，如：a man, a unit, an egg, an hour。常见用法参下表：

常见用法	示例
（1）表示某一类人或某事物中的任何一个，经常用在第一次提到某人或某物时，用不定冠词起介绍的作用，表示一个。	➢ I've bought a car. 我买了一辆车。 ➢ I heard a child crying. 我听到一个小孩在哭。
（2）表示人或事物的某一种类, 强调整体, 即以其中的一个代表一类。	➢ An owl can see in the dark. 猫头鹰在黑暗中能看见东西。 ➢ A teacher needs to have a lot of patience. 教师需要有耐心。
（3）表示"每一"的意思。	➢ I get paid once a month. 我每月领一次工资。
（4）用于姓氏前，表示家庭中的一员。	➢ One of his daughters had married a Rothschild. 他的一个女儿嫁入了罗特希尔德家族。
（5）相当于 one。	➢ You'll have to wait an hour or two. 你要等一到两小时。
（6）用于一些习语中。	➢ a few, a lot, a great deal
（7）用于经常一起提起的两个名词前（常视为一体）。	➢ a cup and saucer（一副杯碟），a knife and fork（一副刀叉）
（8）用于饮料名词之前，表一杯。	➢ Can I get you a coffee? 给你来杯咖啡怎么样？
（9）用于著名艺术家的名字之前，表示他的一个作品。	➢ The painting my grandfather gave me turned out to be a Constable. 我祖父给我的那幅画原来是康斯塔伯的作品.
（10）用于动名词之前，表示一个动作、事件或声音。	➢ "It befell at the Moat House?" Dick ventured, with a beating at his heart. "这事情发生在莫特堡吗?"狄克试探着问，心里却扑通扑通地跳着。 ➢ I became aware of a humming. 我好像听到了一阵嗡嗡声。
（11）不定冠词+抽象名词表示一种具体的感情、行为等，但名词前常有其它修饰词。	➢ There was still an abundance of food when we arrived. 我们抵达时还有很多食物。 ➢ We're looking for someone with a good knowledge of German. 我们正在找一个精通德语的人。 ➢ What a surprise! 多么令人吃惊的事！ ➢ She caught a cold at school. 她在学校得了感冒。 ➢ She dressed in a hurry. 她迅速穿好衣服。
（12）与某人姓名连用, 表示说话者不认识此人。	➢ A Mrs. Green is waiting to see you. 有一位格林太太正等着见你。
（13）表示像（某人）的人。	➢ My boss is a little Napoleon. 我的老板是个小拿破仑。

2)　定冠词的用法

定冠词 the（读作：/ðə 在元音音素前强读ði:/）与指示代词 this/these，that/those 同源，有那（这）个的意思，但较弱，可以和一个名词连用，来表示某个或某些特定的人或事物。常用用法见下表：

常见用法	示例

（1）指已提到过的或已知所指的人、物、事或群体。	➢ A boy and a girl were sitting on a bench. The boy was smiling but the girl looked angry. 一个男孩和一个女孩坐在长凳上。那男孩在微笑，那女孩像在生气。 ➢ There was an accident here yesterday. A car hit a tree. The driver was killed. 昨天这里出事了。有一辆汽车撞在树上了。司机死了。
（2）指独一无二的人或事物。	➢ the sun，the moon
（3）与序数词、形容词最高级，以及 first, last, next 等连用。	➢ the best day of your life 你一生中最美好的一天 ➢ the hottest day of the holiday 假日中最热的一天 ➢ What was the last thing I said? 我最后说的是什么?
（4）与形容词连用，表示某类或某国的全体分子或成员。	➢ trying to do the impossible 试图做做不到的事 ➢ The rich get richer and the poor get poorer. 富的越富，穷的越穷。 ➢ The French are famous for their cooking. 法国人以善烹调着称。
（5）与可数名词的单数连用，指这一类的全体。	➢ The chimpanzee is an endangered species. 黑猩猩是濒于灭种的动物。 ➢ The poodle is a popular house pet. 卷毛狗是很多人都喜爱的宠物。
（6）用于量度单位前，表示“每一”。	➢ My car does forty miles to the gallon. 我的汽车每加仑汽油跑四十英里。 ➢ I work free-lance and am paid by the hour. 我是自由职业者，按小时计酬。 ➢ The price is 50p the dozen. 价格是每打 50 便士。
（7）用在姓名复数之前，表示一家人。	➢ The Greens is very kind to us. 格林一家人待我们很好。
（8）用于一些固定结构中。	➢ In the end 最后，by the way 顺便
（9）用于普通名词构成的专有名词之前。	➢ the West Lake 西湖，the Great Wall 长城，the United States 美国
（10）用于表示地点、方位、具体的时间或某天的一部分。	➢ in the east 在东方，in the west 在西方，in the front 在前面，at the back 在后面，in the afternoon 在下午
（11）用于西洋乐器前（民族乐器前不加）。	➢ play the piano 弹钢琴，play the violin 拉小提琴，play erhu 拉二胡，play pipa 琵琶（中国乐器名词前不与冠词连用）

3) 不用冠词的常见情形

不用冠词的常见情形	示例
（1）专有名词前常不加冠词，但如其后有修饰性成分表特指，需加定冠词。	➢ He is no longer the Brown we knew ten years ago. 他不是我们十年前认识的那个布朗。 ➢ The Beijing of today is different from what it was. 今天的北京不同与从前的北京了。
（2）年份、月份、星期、节日前一般不加冠词。	➢ in 2015, in May, on Sunday, on Christmas Day 圣诞节 ➢ 比较：on a Sunday morning 在一个星期天的早晨 *表示某一个。 ★我国特有的节日要用定冠词：the Spring Festival 春节，the Mid-Autumn Festival 中秋节
（3）三餐、四季前一般不加冠词。	➢ I have lunch at school. 我在学校吃午餐。 ➢ Summer is the best season for swimming.夏天是游泳的好季节。 ➢ 比较：I had a big lunch yesterday. 昨天我吃了一顿丰盛的午餐。*表示某一个。 ➢ I will never forget the summer we spent in Hawaii. 我永远不会忘记我们一起在夏威夷度过的那个夏天。*表示特指。
（4）进行球类、棋类运动，常不加冠词。	➢ play basketball 打篮球，play volleyball 打排球，play football 踢足球 ➢ They meet fairly often to play chess. 他们常见面下国际象棋。
（5）“物质名词、抽象名词”表示一般概念时，	➢ Failure is the mother of success. 失败乃成功之母。

通常不加冠词，但如其后有修饰性成分表特指，需加定冠词。	➢ Man cannot live without water. 人离开水就无法生存。 ➢ He is fond of music. 他喜欢音乐。 ➢ Time is precious. 时间是宝贵的。 ➢ The news that you heard is true. 你听到的消息是真的。 ➢ The water in this well is fit to drink. 这口井里的水能喝。 ➢ The music of the film is very beautiful. 这部影片的音乐很动听。 ➢ The time of the play was 1990s. 这个剧本的时代背景是二十世纪九十年代。
（6）没有特指的可数名词复数形式后。	➢ I like tomatoes. 我喜欢西红柿。 ➢ My mother and father are school teachers. 我母亲和父亲都是教师。
（7）指职位、头衔的词前一般不用冠词。	➢ In 1860, Lincoln became President of the United States. 1860 年，林肯成了美国的总统。 ➢ We made him head of our class. 我们选了他做班长。
（8）当"bike, car, bus, train, boat, ship, plane"等与"by"连用，表示一种交通手段时，不用冠词。	➢ Shall we walk or go by bus? 我们是步行呢，还是乘公共汽车呢? ➢ Are you travelling by train? 你准备坐火车旅行吗？
（9）某些固定词组中不用冠词	➢ The bus didn't come, so we started out **on foot.** 公交没来，所以我们步行出发了。 ➢ You should **go to bed** early tonight. 你今天晚上应该早些睡觉。

★总结：虽然冠词的用法繁多，但我们学习时要注意从其基本用法出发（即 a/an 表泛指，the 表特指），这样有利于我们从根本上掌握其用法。

2. 练习

单选：选择最合适的答案。

(1) A: Do you often play _______ tennis after school?
B: No, I don't like sports. I often play _______ guitar.
A. a, the　　B. the, /　　C. /, the　　D. the, a

(2) _______ orange on the desk is for you, Mike.
A. A　　B. An　　C. /　　D. The

(3) A: What's that on the table?
B: It's _______ map.
A. a　　B. an　　C. the　　D. /

(4) _______ Father's Day is coming. Jerry will buy a new wallet for his father.
A. A　　B. An　　C. The　　D. /

(5) I know you don't like _______ music very much. But what do you think of _______ music in the film we saw yesterday?
A. /; /　　B. the; the　　C. the; /　　D. /; the

(6) My neighbor asked me to go for _______ walk, but I don't think I've got _______ energy.
A. a; /　　B. the; the　　C. a； the　　D. /; the

(7) In many places in China, _______ bicycle is still _______ poplar means of transportation.
A. a; the　　B. /; a　　C. the; a　　D. the; the

(8) I ate _______ sandwich while I was waiting for _______ 20:08 train.
A. the, a　　B. the, the　　C. a, the　　D. a, a

(9) How about taking _______ short break? I want to make _______ call.

A. the；a B. a；the C. the；the D. a；a

(10) _______ are planning to go on vacation.

A. Black's B. A Black's C. The Black's D. The Blacks

(11) A: Why do you like Jack?

B: Because he is _______ honest boy.

A. a B. an C. the D. /

(12) Lily, don't have _______ breakfast before the TV set. You should have meals at _______ table.

A. /, the B. the, a C. the, / D. /, a

(13) According to the instructions, _______ medicine should be taken three times _______ day.

A. the; a B. a; the C. /; / D. the; /

(14) A: How did you pay the workers?

B: As _______ rule, they were paid by _______ hour.

A. the; the B. a; an C. a; the D. the; an

(15) Reading is _______ good habit. Stick to it, and you'll make _______ great progress.

A. a; / B. a; a C .the; a D. /; a

(16) George.W. Bush, _______ President of the United States, is to visit China _______ third time.

A. a; a B. the; a C. /; a D. /; the

(17) Bell invented _______ telephone in 1876.

A. / B. a C. the D. one

(18) France is _______ European country. And India is _______ Asian country.

A. a; the B. the; an C. a; an D. an; an

(19) A: What's the matter?

B: I have _______ headache.

A. a B. an C. the D. /

(20) _______ Yellow River is _______ second longest river in _______ China.

A. The, the, / B. The, the, the C. A, the, the D. The, a, /

(21) There's _______ old pencil on the book. _______ pencil is mine.

A. /, The B. an, The C. the, The C. the, a

(22) I seldom take _______ bus to school. I often go to school by _______ bike.

A. a, / B. /, a C. a, the D. /, the

(23) We can never expect _______ bluer sky unless we create _______ less polluted world.

A. the; a B. a; the C. a; a D. the; the

(24) _______ second Sunday of May is _______ Mother's Day.

A. A; the B. The; a C. /; a D. The; /

(25) Our class teacher is still on _______ holiday, so our monitor will be in _______ charge of the meeting today.

A. /; / B. the; the C. a; / D. the; a

(26) In order to find _______ better job, he decided to study _______ second foreign language.

A. the; a B. a; a C. the; the D. a; the

(27) If we sit near _______ front of the bus, we'll have _______ better view.

A. /; the B. /; a C. the; a D. the; the

(28) It is generally accepted that _______ boy must learn to stand up and fight like _______ man.

A. a; a B. a; the C. the; the D. a; /

(29) As he reached _______ front door, Jack saw _______ strange sight.

A. the; / B. a; the C. /; a D. the; a

(30) A: It's said John will be in a job paying over $60,000 _______ year.

B: Right, he will also get paid by _______ week.

A. the; the B. a; the C. the; a D. a; a

(31) Sarah looked at _______ finished painting with _______ satisfaction.

A. /; a B. a; the C. the; / D. the; a

(32) I woke up with _______ bad headache, yet by _______ evening the pain had gone.

A. the; the B. the; an C. a; the D. a; an

(33) The parents were shocked by _______ news that their son needed _______ operation on his knee.

A. a;/ B. the; / C. the; an D. a; an

第十四章　代词

1.　代词

代词的分类见下表：

<table>
<tr><th>种类</th><th>示例</th></tr>
<tr><td>（1）人称代词：表示我（I）、你（you）、他（he）、她（she）、它（it）、我们（we）、你们（you）、他们（they）的词。</td><td>
<table>
<tr><td>主格[①]</td><td>I</td><td>you</td><td>he</td><td>she</td><td>it</td><td>we</td><td>you</td><td>they</td></tr>
<tr><td>宾格[②]</td><td>me</td><td>you</td><td>him</td><td>her</td><td>it</td><td>us</td><td>you</td><td>them</td></tr>
</table>
➢ When he asked me to marry him I said yes. 他向我求婚，我答应了。
➢ Give them to me. 把那些东西给我。
➢ She and I are from the same country. 她和我来自同一个国家。
➢ I and he stole the car. 我和她偷了这辆车。★人称代词的排列顺序一般为：第二人称、第三人称、第一人称。体现礼貌。但在承担责任时应该把第一人称放在最前面。
➢ “Who’s there?” “Only me.”“谁在那儿?”“只有我。”
➢ Oh, them! We needn’t worry about them. 哦，他们哪！我们用不着为他们担心。★单独使用时，本要使用主格的代词，常用宾格。
</td></tr>
<tr><td>（2）物主代词：表示所有关系的词，有形容词性物主代词和名词性物主代词两种。</td><td>
<table>
<tr><td></td><td>我的</td><td>你的</td><td>他的</td><td>她的</td><td>它的</td><td>我们的</td><td>你们的</td><td>他们的</td></tr>
<tr><td>形容词性</td><td>my</td><td>your</td><td>his</td><td>her</td><td>its</td><td>our</td><td>your</td><td>their</td></tr>
<tr><td>名词性</td><td>mine</td><td>yours</td><td>his</td><td>hers</td><td>its</td><td>ours</td><td>yours</td><td>theirs</td></tr>
</table>
➢ Where’s my hat? 我的帽子在哪里?
➢ That’s your coat there; mine is here. 那边的外套是你的,我的外套在这儿。
</td></tr>
<tr><td>（3）自身代词：表示我自己、你自己、他自己、我们自己、你们自己、他们自己的词。
★自身代词可用作同位语，强调“本人，自己”。</td><td>
<table>
<tr><td>单数</td><td>myself</td><td>yourself</td><td>himself</td><td>herself</td><td>itself</td></tr>
<tr><td>复数</td><td>ourselves</td><td>yourselves</td><td colspan="3">themselves</td></tr>
</table>
➢ I am teaching myself computer. 我自学计算机。
➢ Take good care of yourself. 把自己照顾好。
➢ The child himself drew this picture. 孩子自己画的这张画。
➢ You should ask the children themselves. 你应该问一问孩子们自己。
</td></tr>
<tr><td>（4）相互代词：表示相互关系的代词叫，有 each other 和 one another 两组，在运用中，这两组词没什么区别。</td><td>
➢ The boys like each other. 男孩们互相都很喜欢。
➢ The students help one another. 学生彼此帮助。
</td></tr>
<tr><td>（5）指示代词：表示这个（this），那个（that），这些（these），那些（those）的词。</td><td>
➢ This is my husband. 这是我丈夫。
➢ Look at that! 看那个!
➢ Would you give her these? 你要把这些给她吗?
➢ Those look juicier than these. 那些显得比这些汁液多。
➢ Come here and look at this picture. 过来看看这幅画。
➢ How much are those apples at the back? 后边那些苹果多少钱?
</td></tr>
<tr><td>（6）疑问代词：表示谁（who），谁（whom），</td><td>➢ What does it mean? 这是什么意思?</td></tr>
</table>

① 即作主语或表语时采用的形式。
② 即作宾语时采用的形式。当表语的代词应采用主格形式。但是在口语习惯上人们常用宾格形式，如：
➢ It's me。是我。
➢ That must be her now. 那位一定就是她了。

谁的（whose），什么（what），哪个或哪些 （which）的词。	➢ Whom/who are you looking for? 你在找谁? ＊口语中 who 也可以用作宾格。 ➢ Which is your favourite subject? 你最喜欢哪个科目?
（7）关系代词：用来引导关系从句的代词。常用的关系代词有：who, whose, whom, that, which, as。	➢ The clothes that are on the floor are dirty. 地板上的那些衣物是脏的。 ➢ This is the pen whose point is broken. 这就是笔尖断了的那枝笔。 ➢ As is known to everybody, the moon travels round the earth once every month. 众所周知，月球每个月绕地球转一周。
（8）不定代词：没有明确指定代替任何特定名词的词，表示不确定的人或事物、不确定的数量或不确定的选择。 常用不定代词有：some, somebody, someone, something, everybody, everyone, everything, any, anybody, anyone, anything, nobody, nothing, all, both, neither, none, either, each, other, the other, others, the others, another, one, much, many, few, a few, little, a little, that。	➢ That's all I know.这就是我知道的。 ➢ Nothing gives me more pleasure than listening to Mozart. 再没有比听莫扎特的乐曲更让我高兴的事了。 ➢ You'll find some in the cupboard. 柜橱里有一些。 ➢ Have you got any? 你有吗? ➢ I forgot to bring a pen. Can you lend me one? 我忘带钢笔了。你借我一枝行吗? ➢ There's something under the table. 桌子底下有个东西。 ➢ I chose neither of them. 这两个我都不要。 ➢ She never eats much for breakfast. 她早点从不多吃。 ➢ I understood little of what he said. 他说的我只听懂一点儿。

2. 练习

单选：选择最合适的答案。

(1) Nine in ten parents said there were significant differences in their approach to educating their children compared with _______ of their parents.
A. those B. one C. both D. that

(2) One of the most important questions they had to consider was _______ of public health.
A. what B. this C. that D. which

(3) Charles was alone at home, with _______ looking after him.
A. someone B. anyone C. not one D. no one

(4) The CDs are on sale! Buy one and you get _______ completely free.
A. other B. others C. one D. ones

(5) A: Wow! You've got so many clothes.
B: But ____ of them are in fashion now.
A. all B. both C. neither D. none

(6) Over the past 20 years, the Internet has helped change our world in _______ way or another for the better.
A. any B. one C. every D. either

(7) I felt so bad all day yesterday that I decided this morning I couldn't face _______ day like that.
A. other B. another C. the other D. others

(8) I like this house with a beautiful garden in front, but I don't have enough money to buy _______.
A. one B. it C. this D. that

(9) A: I've read another book this week .
B: Well, maybe _______ is not how much you read but what you read that counts .
A .this B. that C. there D. it

(10) You are the team star! Working with _______ is really your cup of tea.
A. both B. either C. others D. the other

(11) I'll spend half of my holiday practicing English and _______ half learning drawing.

A. another B. the other C. other's D. other

(12) The doctor thought _______ would be good for you to have a holiday.

A. this B. that C. one D. it

(13) Helping others is a habit, _______ you can learn even at an early age.

A. it B. that C. what D. one

(14) The cost of renting a house in central Xi'an is higher than _______ in any other area of the city.

A. that B. this C. it D. one

(15) I got this bicycle for _______; my friend gave it to me when she bought a new one.

A. everything B. something C. anything D. nothing

(16) The employment rate has continued to rise in big cities thanks to the efforts of the local governments to increase _______.

A. them B. those C. it D. that

(17) We have various summer camps for your holidays. You can choose _______ based on your own interests.

A. either B. each C. one D. it

(18) Why don't you bring _______ to his attention that you're too ill to work on?

A. that B. it C. this D. him

(19) Surprisingly, Susan's beautiful hair reached below her knees and made___ almost an overcoat for her.

A. them B. her C. itself D. herself

(20) Larry asks Bill and Peter to go on a picnic with him, but _______ of them wants to, because they have work to do.

A. either B. any C. neither D. none

(21) A: Have you figured out how much the trip will cost?

B: $4,000, or _______ like that.

A. anything B. everything C. something D. nothing

(22) Studying Wendy's menu, I found that many of the items are similar to_____ of McDonald's.

A. those B. ones C. any D. all

(23) When you are done with the book, just give it to Lucy or Helen or _______.

A. whoever B. wherever C. whatever D. however

(24) Maria has written two novels, both of _____ have been made into television series.

A. them B. that C. which D. what

(25) It's an either-or situation -- we can buy a new car this year or we can go on holiday but we can't do _______.

A. others B. either C. another D. both

(26) At our factory there are a few machines similar to _____ described in this magazine.

A. them B. these C. those D. ones

第十五章　数词

1.　数词

表示数目多少的词叫基数词，表示顺序多少的词叫序数词，这两种词统称为数词，如：one（1），two（2），three（3），first（第一），second（第二），third（第三）。数词的具体表示方法见下表：

基数词	◇从 **1—10**：one，two，three，four，five，six，seven，eight，nine，ten
	◇从 **11—19**：eleven，twelve，thirteen，fourteen，fifteen，sixteen，seventeen，eighteen，nineteen
	◇从 **21—99**： （1）整数几十中除 twenty，thirty，forty，fifty，eighty 为特殊形式外，sixty，seventy，ninety 都是其个位数形式后添加后缀-ty 构成； （2）表示几十几时，在几十和个位基数词形式之间添加连字符“-”，如：32 (thirty-two)，56 (fifty-six)，87 (eighty-seven)。
	◇百位数： （1）个数基数词后加“hundred”，表示几百，如：200 (two hundred)，500 (five hundred)； （2）在几十几与百位间加上 and，表示其它百位数，　如：345 (three hundred and forty-five)，203 (two hundred and three)，320 (three hundred and twenty)，647 (six hundred and forty-seven)。
	◇千位数及以上： （1）个数基数词后加“thousand”，表示几千，如：2000 (two thousand)，5000 (five thousand)； （2）从数字的右端向左端数起，每三位数加一个逗号“，”。从右开始，第一个“，”前的数字后添加 thousand（千），第二个“，”前面的数字后添加 million（百万），第三个“，”前的数字后添加 billion（十亿），然后一节一节分别表示，如：3,843 (three thousand eight hundred and forty-three), 17,350,064 (seventeen million three hundred and fifty thousand and sixty-four)。
	★基数词一般是单数形式，但下列情况，常用复数： （1）hundred，thousand，million，billion 等在表确切的数字时只用单数形式，但是在表示不确切数字时要用复数，且常与 of 连用，如： ➢　Her hat cost hundreds of pounds. 她的帽子值好几百镑。 （2）表示“几十岁”，如： ➢　He is in his early thirties. 他才三十出头。 （3）表示“年代”，用 in +the +数词复数，如： ➢　It took place in the 1970s. 事情发生在 20 世纪 70 年代。 （4）在一些固定的词组里，如： ➢　They arrived in twos and threes. 他们三三两两的到达了。 ➢　sixes and sevens　乱七八糟 （5）在乘法运算的一种表示法里，如： ➢　Four fives is (are) twenty. 4 乘以 5 等于 20。
序数词	◇从第一至第十九： （1）one-first，two-second，three-third，five-fifth，eight-eighth，nine-ninth，twelve-twelfth 为特殊形式； （2）其它的序数词都是由其相对应的基数词后面加后缀-th 构成，如：　six- sixth，nineteen- nineteenth。
	◇从第二十至第九十九： （1）整数第几十的形式由其对应的基数词改变结尾字母“y”为“i”，再加“eth”构成，如：twenty- twentieth，thirty- thirtieth； （2）表示第几十几时，用几十的基数词形式加上连字符“-”和个位序数词形式一起表示，如：thirty-third（第三十三），fifty-sixth（第五十六），seventy-sixth（第七十六），ninety-ninth（第九十九）。

	◇第一百以上的多位序数词： 由基数词的形式变结尾部分为序数词形式来表示，如：one hundredth（第一百），one hundred and twenty-first （第一百二十一），five thousand，two hundred and twentieth（第五千二百二十）。

2. 数词的运用

常用表达法	示例
（1）年份：一般将年份用阿拉伯数字表示，读时常将千位和百位看成一个整体，十位和个位看成一个整体，也可以hurndred 为单位来读。 公元前用 B.C.；公元用 A.D.	➢ 1764 读作：seventeen sixty-four 或 seventeen hundred and sixty-four ➢ 2001 读作：two thousand and one 或 twenty hundred and one ➢ 215 读作：two fifteen 或 two hundred and fifteen ➢ 公元前 56 年写作：56 B.C.读作：fifty-six B.C. ➢ 公元 7 年写作：7 A.D.读作：seven A.D.
（2）日期：英语中的日期有两种顺序，即日月，年或月日年。 日期可以用基数词（但读作序数词），也可以用序数词。	➢ 2015 年 4 月 26 日可以表示为:April 26, 2015 或 26th/26 April 2015。 ＊注意第一种表达方式日和年份之间要有逗号。
（3）钟点：钟点有两种读法： a）直接读数字：先读小时，然读分钟。 b）先读分钟，然后读小时：半小时及以内用 past/after（即几点过几分），超过半小时用 to，即 60-分钟数+下一个钟点（即几点差几分）。	➢ 08:00（eight o'clock 或 eight） ➢ 09:15（nine fifteen 或 a quarter past/after nine） ➢ 02:30（two thirty 或 half past/after two） ➢ 05:45（five forty-five 或 a quarter to six） ➢ 07:40 （seven forty 或 twenty to eight）
（4）分数：分数由基数词和序数词构成：分子用基数词，分母用序数词，当分子超过"1"时，分母用复数。	➢ two thirds=2/3，three fifths=3/5
（5）小数：小数点前的数按总数念，同其它基数词读法一样，小数点用 point，小数点后面的数按基数词一个一个单独念。	➢ 10.65 读作 ten point six five。 ➢ 316.32 读作 three hundred and sixteen point three two。 ➢ 3.05 读作 three point zero/o five ＊0 读作 zero 或 o。
（6）百分数：百分数由基数词加百分号（%，读作 percent）组成。	➢ thirty percent=30%，60 percent=60% ➢ 35.63%读作：thirty-five point six three percent
（7）常见数学运算：加、减、乘和除。请按右侧的例子模仿。	➢ 5+4=9 可以按以下方式读： Five and four make nine; Five plus four is nine/Five plus four is equal to nine; Five added to four equals nine。 ➢ 8-2=6 可以按以下方式读： Eight minus two is six; Two (taken) from eight is six; two from eight leaves six. ➢ 3×2=6 可以按以下方式读： Three times two is/are six; Three multiplied by two makes six. ➢ 2÷3=4 可以以按下方式读： Twelve divided by three is/makes four.
（8）倍数：通常借助 times 来表示。	➢ Their house is twice the size of ours=Their house is two times as big as ours. 他们的房子有我们房子两倍大。

3. 练习

单选：选择最合适的答案。

(1) When he arrived at the airport, James found that _______ fans were waiting for him there.

A. hundred B. hundreds C. hundred of D. hundreds of

(2) He has _______ children, two boys and two girls.

A. fourth B. forty C. fourteen D. four

(3) It is reported that the floods have left about _______ people homeless.

A. two thousand B. two-thousands C. two thousands D. two thousands of

(4) He wrote a _______ report.

A. two-thousand-words B. two-thousand-word

C. two-thousands-word D. two-thousands-words

(5) Most of us came here _______.

A. in 1978 May B. in May 1978 C. on May 1978 D. 1978, May

(6) About _______ of the workers in that company are young people.

A. third-fifths B. three-fifths C. three-fives D. three-fifth

(7) The hero of the story is an artist in his _______.

A. thirties B. thirty C. thirty's D. thirtieth

(8) We need three _______ boxes.

A. dozens of B. dozens C. dozen of D. dozen

(9) A: How much is the white coat?

B: It's _______ yuan.

A. one thousand, six hundred, eighty-eight B. one thousand six hundred eighty-eight

C. one thousand, six hundred and eighty-eight D. one thousand and six hundred and eighty-eight

(10) _______ and three is ten.

A. Five B. Six C. Seven D. Nine

(11) A: Which is the smallest number of the four?

B: _______.

A. A quarter B. A half C. Two-thirds D. Three-fourths

(12) Please turn to Page _______ and read the _______ story.

A. Ten; two B. Ten; second C. Tenth; second D. Tenth; two

(13) A: Is Mary _______?

B: No, she is a _______ girl.

A. twelve years old; fourteen years old B. twelve years old; fourteen-year-old

C. twelve-year-old; fourteen years old D. twelve-year-old; fourteen-year-old

(14) _______ the students in this school is about four thousand, and _______ of them are boys.

A. A number of, three fifth B. The number of, three fifths

C. A number of, three fifths D. The number of, three fifth

(15) Helen is my friend. She is in _______ at Beijing No.11Middle School.

A. Year 3 B. 3 grade C. 3th Year D. grade third

(16) 220, 309 should be read _______.

A. two thousand and twenty thousands, three hundred and nine

B. two hundred and twenty thousand and three hundred and nine

C. two hundred and twenty thousands and three hundred and nine

D. two hundred and twenty thousand, three hundred and nine

(17) The river is very long and it is about _______.

A. 20 metres wide B. 15 metres long C. 30 metres high D. 50 metres tall

(18) ________ the students in our class didn't go to see the film last night.

A. Ten percent B. Ten of percent C. Ten percent of D. Ten percents

(19) About ________ of the workers in the factory were born in the ________.

A. two-thirds, 1970 B. two-thirds, 1970s C. two-third,1970 D. two-third, 1970s

第十六章　动词

1.　过去式和过去分词的构成方法

在前面的章节中我们已经学过，通过将动词原型变成过过式，体现“时”， 通过“have+done（过去分词）”，体现“完成态”，下面我们将学习如何将动词原型变成过去式和过去分词：

规则	示例
（1）大部分成动词加 ed。 词尾是清辅音的话，发[t]的音，词尾是浊辅音或元音的话，发[d]的音，词尾是 t/d 时，发[id]的音。	➢ want（原形）/wanted（过去式）/wanted（过去分词） ➢ talk/talked/talked
（2）以 e 结尾的词加 d。 词尾是清辅音的话，发[t]的音，词尾是浊辅音或元音的话，发[d]的音。	➢ live/lived/lived ➢ free/freed/freed
（3）以“辅音+y”的动词，改 y 为 i，再加 ed。 发[d]的音。	➢ study/studied/studied ➢ try/tried/tried
（4）以一个辅音字母结尾的重读闭音节，构成过去式时要重复词尾辅音字母，然后加 ed。 重复写的辅音字母不发音。原型动词词尾是清辅音的话，ed 发[t]的音，词尾是浊辅音或元音的话，发[d]的音。 ★重读闭音节，必须同时满足下列三个条件： a）这个音节必须重读； b）这个单词结尾必须是“辅元辅”，即“辅音字母＋元音字母＋辅音字母”； c）在这个“辅元辅”中的元音字母必须发短音。	➢ chat/chatted/chatted ➢ fit/fitted/fitted ➢ stop/stopped/stopped ➢ regret/regretted/regretted
（5）有些动词的过去式和过去分词不规则，需要记忆。	➢ go（原形）/went（过去式）/gone（过去分词）

2.　现在分词的构成方法

英语中，我们通过“be+doing（现在分词）”体现“进行态”，通过“have+been+doing（现在分词）”体现“完成进行态”，下面我们将学习如何将动词原型变成现在分词①：

规则	示例
（1）一般在动词原形末尾加 ing。	do/doing，go/going，sing/singing，
（2）以不发音的 e 结尾的动词，先去 e，再加 ing。	dance/dancing，like/liking，make/ making，write/writing
（3）以重读闭音节结尾的动词，并且末尾只有一个辅音字母，应双写这一字母，再加 ing。	cut/cutting，beg/begging，swim/swimming
（4）以 ie 结尾的动词，把 ie 变成 y 再加 ing。	die/dying，lie/lying

3.　动词的第三人称单数的构成方法

① 将动词原型变成动名词与将动词原型变成现在分词的规则一样。

规则	示例
（1）大部部分动词，直接在词尾加 s。 所加的 s 在清辅音后发为[s]的音，在浊辅音及元音后发[z]的音。所加的 s 在[t]后可以与[t]一起发[ts]的音，在[d]后与[d]一起发[dz]的音。	get/gets，play/plays，show/shows
（2）以 ch，sh，s，x，o 结尾的词加 es，一般发[iz]的音。	catch/catches，flash/flashes，do/does
（3）以"辅音字母+y"结尾的词，先将 y 变为 i，再加 es，发[iz]的音。	cry/cries，fly/flies，fry/fries

第十七章　形容词

1.　形容词的种类

形容词的种类，详见下表：

种类	示例
（1）品质形容词：它们表示人或事物的性质或特征，英语中的绝大部分形容词属于此类。	bad（坏的），big（大的），good（好的），healthy （健康的），small（小的）
（2）颜色形容词：它们用来形容颜色。	green（绿的），red（红色的），yellow（黄色的）
（3）类属形容词：此类形容词表示属于哪一类。	medical （医学的），political（政治的），rural（乡村的）
（4）强调形容词：这些形容词起强调作用。	total （完全的），sheer（十足的）
（5）-ing 形容词：这类形容词由现在分词转变而来，一般具有主动的意义。	tiring（累人的），pleasing（使人高兴的），interesting（使人感兴趣的）
（6）-ed 形容词：大多数-ed 形容词都与及物动词有关，由过去分词转变而来，一般具有被动意义。	confused（困惑的），excited（激动的），surprised（感到惊讶的）
（7）合成形容词：合成形容词在英语中比较普遍，其大多由关系从句省略简化而来。	hard-working（勤劳的），low-lying（低哇的），soft-hearted（心肠软的）

2.　形容词的位置

形容词一般放在被修饰的名词之前。如果有两个或两个以上的形容词修饰一个名词时，则由它们和被修饰的名词之间的密切程度而定，越密切的形容词越靠近名词。如果几个形容词的密切程度差不多则音节少的形容词放在前面，音节多的形容词放在后面。具体的规则是[1]：

限定词（冠词/物主代词/指示代词/名词所有格）●一般描绘性形容词●表示大小、长短、高低的形容词●表示形状的形容词●表示年龄、新旧的形容词●表示颜色的形容词●表示国籍、地区、出处的形容词●表示物质、材料的形容词●表示用途、类别的形容词●名词中心词，如：a charming small round old brown French oak writing desk[2]。

以下两种情况还需注意：

（1）something, anything, nothing 等不定代词被形容词修饰时，形容词放在不定代词后面，如：

- I think there's something wrong with the phone. 我觉得这个电话有问题。
- Did she tell you anything interesting? 她跟你说过什么有趣的事吗?
- There is nothing dangerous here[3]. 这儿一点都不危险。

（2）由两个或两个以上的词组成的形容词词组修饰名词时一般须放在名词之后。

- This is a book easy to read. 这是一本容易读的书。

3.　形容词的原级、比较级和最高级

---

[1] The order can sometimes be different. We sometimes prefer to put a short adjective before a long one. In general, the adjective closest to the noun has the closest link in meaning with the noun and expresses what is most permanent about it. For example, in the phrase ***two excellent public tennis courts,*** the word ***tennis*** is closely linked to courts, whereas ***excellent*** is not linked so closely. The fact that the courts are for tennis is permanent, but their excellence is a matter of opinion.

[2] 引自章振邦《新编英语语法教程》第三版，p698, 699。

[3] We can use two adjectives together without a linking word, e.g. *a cold, gloomy day*.

1) 构成规则

绝大多数形容词（多为品质形容词）有三种形式：原级、比较级和最高级，以表示形容词说明的性质在程度上的不同。形容词的比较级和最高级形式是在形容词的原级形式的基础上变化而来的，分为规则变化和不规则变化[①]：

比较级和最高级的构成规则	示例
（1）一般单音节形容词词尾分别加-er 和-est。	➢ great（原级），greater（比较级），greatest（最高级) ➢ young，younger，youngest
（2）以不发音的 e 结尾的单音节形容词词尾分别加-r 和-st。	➢ wide，wider，widest ➢ large，larger，largest
（3）以重读闭音节结尾的形容词，如果词尾是一个辅音字母，在加-er 和-est 之前要重复词尾的辅音字母。	➢ big，bigger，biggest ➢ hot，hotter，hottest
（4）当形容词以辅音字母加 y 结尾时，一般将 y 变成 i 再分别加-er 和-est。	➢ happy，happier，happiest ➢ busy，busier，busiest
（5）部分双音节词和所有多音节词的前面须加 more 和 most 构成比较级和最高级。	➢ beautiful，more beautiful，most beautiful ➢ attractive，more attractive，most attractive
（6）有些形容词的比较级和最高级不规则，需要记忆。常见的请见右边例词。	➢ bad/ill，worse，worst ➢ good/well，better，best ➢ little，littler/less，littlest/least ➢ many/much，more，most ➢ old，older/elder，oldest/eldest ➢ far，farther/further，farthest/furthest

2) 形容词的原级、比较级和最高级的具体运用

具体用法见下表：

用法	示例
（1）原级：形容词的原级可与 as...as 连用表示“和......同样.....”，与 not as/so...as 连用表示“不如......那 样......”。	➢ You are as sweet as sugar. 你甜如蜜。 ➢ He was as white as a sheet. 他面色苍白如纸。 ➢ It wasn't so bad as last time! 这次不像上次那么坏!
（2）比较级：用于两个人或事物的比较。其结构形式为：主语+谓语（系动词）+ 形容词比较级+than+对比成分。也就是，含有形容词比较级的主句+than+从句。 注意从句常常省去意义上和主句相同的部分，而只剩下对比的成分。 ★一个事物的逐渐增长或减少用两个由 and 连接的比较级表示。	➢ Our teacher is taller than we are. 我们老师的个子比我们的高。 ➢ It is warmer today than it was yesterday. 今天的天气比昨天暖和。 ➢ This picture is more beautiful than that one. 这张照片比那张照片漂亮。 ➢ This meeting is less important than that one. 这次会议不如那次会议重要。 ➢ The sun is much bigger than the moon. 太阳比月亮大得多。 ➢ The weather is getting colder and colder.天气越来越冷了。 ➢ He became less and less interested. 他越来越不感兴趣。
（3）最高级：三个或三个以上的人或物进行比较时，以 the+最高级的方式来表达。	➢ This is the oldest theatre in London. 这是伦敦最古老的剧院。 ➢ That day was the hottest day of the holiday. 那天假日中最热的一天。

① We follow almost the same rules to form an adverb's comparative and superlative.

4. 练习

单选：选择最合适的答案。

(1) A：How is the weather today?

B：It's _______.

A. hot and sun B. cold and wind C. warm and sunny D. snow and windy

(2) I'm as tall as Jimmy although he's _______ than me.

A. old B. older C. oldest D. young

(3) Although Mary is a new teacher, she knows _______ student in her class.

A. either B. all C. every D. none

(4) A little wine will not be _______ to your health. Just don't drink too much.

A. helpful B. helpless C. harmful D. harmless

(5) Air pollution has become _______ than ever before.

A. serious B. more serious C. most serious D. the most serious

(6) The Great Wall of China is _______ wall in the world.

A. long B. longer C. longest D. the longest

(7) A: Which is _______, the sun, the moon or the earth?

B: Of course the moon is.

A. small B. smaller C. smallest D. the smallest

(8) Ten years ago the population of our village was _______ that of theirs.

A. as twice large as B. twice as large as C. twice as much as D. as twice much as

(9) Of the two sisters, Betty is _______ one, and she is also the one who loves to be quiet.

A. a younger B. a youngest C. the younger D. the youngest

(10) Can we do our work better with _______ money and _______ people?

A. lesser, few B. less, fewer C. little, less D. few, less

(11) _______ the temperature, _______ water turns into steam.

A. The high, the fast B. Higher, faster C. The more higher, the faster D. The higher, the faster

(12) I'm good at English, and I want to learn _______ foreign language.

A. other B. another C. the other D. others

(13) A: What's in your _______ hand?

B: Nothing but a coin.

A. other B. the other C. another D. others

(14) The price of petrol is not _______ that of last year, so some more people are planning to buy cars.

A. as expensive as B. so cheap as C. as low as D. so high as

(15) He was so _______ when he heard the _______ news that he got the first prize in the contest.

A. exciting, exciting B. exciting, excited C. excited, excited D. excited, exciting

(16) It's a _______ clock, made of brass and dating from the nineteenth century.

A. charming French small B. French small charming

C. small French charming D. charming small French

(17) This restaurant wasn't _______ that other restaurant we went to.

A. half as good as B. as half good as C. as good as half D. good as half as

(18) The children loved their day trip, and they enjoyed the horse ride _______.

A. most B. more C. less D. little

(19) Mr. Black is very happy because the clothes made in his factory have never been ________.

A. popular B. more popular C. most popular D. the most popular

(20) The new stadium being built for the next Asian Games will be ________ the present one.

A. as three times big as B. three times as big as

C. as big as three times D. as big three times as

(21) It may not be a great suggestion. But before ________ is put forward, we'll make do with it.

A. a good one B. a better one C. the best one D. a best one

(22) There are a small number of people involved, possibly ________ twenty.

A. as few as B. as little as C. as many as D. as much as

(23) This is by far ________ movie that I have ever seen.

A. an inspiring B. a much inspiring C. the most inspiring D. the more inspiring

第十八章　句子的种类

1.　句子的种类

英语中共存在四种句子，即：陈述句、疑问句、祈使句及感叹句，具体构成方式见下表：

（1）陈述句：用来陈述事实或观点的句子，句尾用逗号，一般用降调。 陈述句的否定结构： 1）如果陈述句谓语的第一部分为情态动词、be 或助动词 have/has/had/will/would/shall/should，在其后加上 not； 2）否则在其谓语前加上助动词 do（如果谓语的时为现在，且主语不为第三人称单数形式时）、does（如果谓语的时为现在，且主语为第三人称单数时）或 did（如果谓语的时为过去），并加上 not[1]。		➢ She drank a whole cup of milk. 她喝了满满一杯牛奶。 ➢ The world exists in space and time. 世界存在于空间与时间之中。 ➢ She didn't see him. 她没见他。 ➢ She doesn't work here. 她不在此地工作。 ➢ I don't like fish. 我不喜欢鱼。 ➢ You may not be chosen. 可能挑不上你。 ➢ They aren't here. 他们没在这儿。 ➢ I mustn't forget[2]. 我决不能忘记。
（2）疑问句：用来提出问题的句子，其句尾用问号，包含右边四种。	**1）一般疑问句**：是对句子本身提出疑问的句子，一般用升调[3]。 **其构成规则如下：** a）如果其谓语第一部分为情态动词、be 或助动词 have/has/had/will/would/shall/should，将第一部分提至句子最前面，其它部分不变； b）否则在句子的最前面加上助动词 do，does 或 did **（注意 do，does 或 did 已经体现了谓语动作的发生时间、主语的人称和数，所以此时原来陈述句的谓语部分的第一部分动词要用动词原型）。** 一般用 yes 或 no 简略回答。	➢ Have you been living here? 你一直住在这儿吗？ ➢ Is he not a student? 他不是学生吗？ ➢ Do you believe him? 你相信他吗？ ➢ Did they take you home? 是他们把你送到家的吗？ ➢ Does she speak French? 她会说法语吗? ➢ Can you call back tomorrow? 你明天能回个电话吗? ➢ Will you post this letter for me, please? 请您把这封信给我寄出去行吗? ➢ Had they left before you got there? 你到达那里时他们已经离开了吗?
	2）以特殊疑问词开头，对句中某一成分提问的句子叫特殊疑问句，一般用降调。	➢ What happened[4]? 出了什么事？ ➢ Who is that man[5]? 那人是谁？

---

① There are double negatives in English. Examples:
- ➢ I didn't see no one. I saw one of my friends. (= I saw someone.)
- ➢ We can't do nothing. (= We must do something.)

In a statement the subject usually makes a link with the situation or with the previous sentence. And the new information normally comes later in the sentence. For example: I hate supermarkets. They're so crowded. And they're expensive. The prices horrify me.
*Each of these sentences begins with something known, old information.***They*** refers back to ***supermarkets***; ***the prices*** makes a link with ***expensive.***

② We can use a negative tag in reply to a positive statement to express agreement. Examples:
- ➢ Max played the part brilliantly. ~ Yes, didn't he?
- ➢ It's a lovely day. ~ It is, isn't it?
- ➢ That was fun. ~ Yes, wasn't it?

③ A rising intonation means that the speaker is unsure if something is true or not.

④ In more formal English a preposition can come before the question word. Examples:
- ➢ To whom was the parcel addressed?
- ➢ On what evidence was it decided to make the arrest?

⑤ In informal speech the question can be without inversion. Examples:
- ➢ You haven't finished yet?
- ➢ You're travelling when?
- ➢ You're travelling tomorrow?

	其构成形式与一般疑问句相同，只不过通常要将特殊疑词置于句首。 常用的特殊疑问词有：what, who, whose, which, when, where, how, why 等。 注意：如果对主句的主语提问，此时只需将主语变成疑问词，并在句尾加上问号就行。	➢ Whose bicycle is this? 这是谁的自行车？ ➢ Which do you want? 你要哪个？ ➢ When can you come? 你什么时候能来？ ➢ Where did you go? 你上哪去了？ ➢ How does he do it? 他是怎样做的？ ➢ Why were you late? 你为什么迟到？ ➢ Who/Whom did they invite[1]? 他们邀请了谁？ ➢ Since when have you been interested in my feelings?[2] 你什么时候开始对我的感受感兴趣了？
	3）选择疑问句是指提出两个或两个以上的答案供对方选择的句式。 前一部分是个一般疑问句或特殊疑问句，后面加上 or 提供给对方另一个选择，让对方根据实际情况进行选择回答[3]。	➢ Will you have tea, (or) coffee or lemonade? 你喝茶、（还是）咖啡还是汽水? ➢ Which subject do you like better, physics or chemistry? 你更喜欢那个课目，物理还是化学？
	4）附加疑问句由陈述句加简短附加问句构成，用以要求对方证实所述之事[4]。 前后两部分谓语应是，“肯定陈述+否定疑问”或“否定陈述+肯定疑问”。遵循前肯后否，前否后肯的原则。 无论问题提法如何，回答时先按实际情况回答，如果是肯定的回答，就在前面加上 Yes，否则加上 No。 当说话者的目的不在疑问，而是为了加强语气时，用降调。当说话者的目的在疑问，则用升调。	➢ She doesn’t work here, does she? 她不在此地工作，是吗? 分析： a）如果她在此工作，就回答：She does=She works here，这是肯定的回答，所以在前面加上 Yes，所以最终的回答是：*Yes, she does.* b）如果她不在此工作，就回答：She doesn’t=She doesn’t works here，这是否定的回答，所以在前面加上 No，所以最终的回答是：*No, she doesn’t.* ➢ He married his boss’s daughter, didn’t he? 他娶了老板的女儿，是吗? ➢ She’d fallen asleep by that time, hadn’t she? 那时她早已睡着了，是吗? ➢ We mustn’t be late, must we? 我们不能迟到，是吧? ➢ He’ll start school soon, won’t he? 他很快就要上学了，对吧?

We make a question negative by putting *n't* after the auxiliary. Examples:
➢ Why doesn't the government take action?
➢ Why aren't I getting paid for this?
In more formal English *not* comes after the subject. Examples:
➢ Have you not finished yet?
➢ Why does the government not take action?
If the question word is the subject, *n't* or *not* comes after the auxiliary. Example:
➢ Who hasn't returned/has not returned this library book?
A negative question often expresses surprise/complaint/suggestion. Examples:
➢ Can't you ring me? *surprise.
➢ Can't you be quiet? I'm trying to concentrate. *complaint.
➢ Why can't you be quiet? *complaint.
➢ Why don't we take a break now? I'm tired. *suggestion
➢ Why didn't you tell me this before? You should have told me. *complaint
We can use *Why not* + verb instead of *Why don't you*... in a suggestion. Example:
➢ Why not use your credit card?

[1] When *who* is the object, we can use *whom* instead, which is formal and rather old-fashioned. *Who* is more common in everyday speech.

[2] ***Since*** comes before ***when*** even in informal English.

[3] The intonation rises for the first choice, and then it falls after ***or***.

[4] We can change the meaning of a tag question with the musical pitch of our voice. When the statement is clearly true, then the speaker uses a falling intonation on the tag. But when the speaker is not sure if the statement is true, then the tag is more like a real question, a request for information. The speaker's voice rises on the tag.

		➢ Let's look at it again, shall we? 咱们再看一看好吗? ➢ She never came again, did she[①]?
（3）祈使句用来表示命令、请求、建议、劝告等。 其主语一般为第二人称，常省略；其谓语要用动词原型，否定时加上 do not，句尾用句号或感叹号，一般用降调[②]。		➢ Come here! 到这儿来! ➢ Don't forget to write. 别忘了写信。 ➢ Do be careful[③]. 千万小心。 ➢ Get out your books[④]. 拿出你的出本。 ➢ You be careful what you're saying[⑤]. 你说话要小心。
（4）感叹句是用来表示喜怒哀乐等强烈感情的句子，一般以感叹号结尾，一般用降调。 其结构一般分为两种： 1）How+被感叹的形容词或副词+句子的其它部分。 2）What+被感叹的名词或名词短语（如果名词为单数可数名词，其前面要加上 a/an）+句子的其它部分。		➢ What **a big house**! 好大的房子！ ➢ What **bright colours**! 多么鲜艳的颜色! ➢ What **an interesting book** it is! 它是一本多么有趣的书啊！ ➢ How **beautiful** it is! 多漂亮呀! ➢ How **well** you look[⑥]! 你看起来好健康啊！

2. 练习

单选：选择最合适的答案。

(1) A: _______ does Linda want to be when she grows up?

B: A tennis player like Li Na.

A. How B. When C. What D. Where

(2) A: On Bill's 14th birthday, his friends had a surprise party for him.

B: _______ lucky boy!

A. What a B. What C. How D. How is

(3) A: _______ did you buy your e-dictionary?

B: Two days ago.

A. Why B. When C. How D. Where

(4) A: _______ is it from your home to school?

B: It's three miles.

---

① The adverbs ***never, rarely, seldom, hardly, barely, scarcely*** etc have a negative sense. Even though they may be in a positive statement, the feeling of the statement is negative. We treat statements with these words like negative statements, so the question tag is normally positive.

② We can use question tags (will you? won't you? would you?can you? can't you? could you?) with imperatives for emphasis, but they remain imperatives and don't require a direct answer. Examples:

➢ Get out your books, will/would/can/could you?

➢ Keep still, won't/can't you? *A negative tag expresses greater feeling of anxiousness or annoyance.

In warnings, reminders and good wishes, the tag is ***won't you?*** after a positive imperative and ***will you?*** after a negative.

➢ Have a nice holiday, won't you?

➢ Don't forget your key, will you?

In offers and invitations the tag is ***will you?*** or ***won't you?***

➢ Take a seat, will/won't you?

③ For emphasis we use ***do*** + base form.

④ We often make an order less abrupt by expressing it as a request in question form. Examples:

➢ *Can you get out your books, please?*

➢ *Could you just keep still a moment?*

⑤ We can mention the subject when it contrasts with another person or to make an order emphatic or even aggressive. Example: I'll wait here. You go round the back.

⑥ Some exclamations can be in the form of a negative question with the voice rising then falling. Examples:

➢ Aren't you lucky! (= How lucky you are!)

➢ Didn't we laugh! (= How we laughed!)

A. How far B. How long C. How big D. How high

(5) _______ delicious these beef noodles are!

A. What B. How C. What a D. How a

(6) A: Your father never watch the drama series on TV, _______?

B: _______. He thinks these drama series are boring and dull.

A. does he; Yes, he does B. does he; No, he doesn't

C. doesn't he ; Yes, he does D. doesn't he ; No, he doesn't

(7) A: _______ can you finish the report on food safety?

B: In two days.

A. How far B. How much C. How often D. How soon

(8) _______ carefully, Henry! There's a school ahead.

A. Drive B. To drive C. Drove D. Driving

(9) We forgot to bring our tickets, but please let us enter, _______.

A. do you B. can we C. will you D. shall we

(10) There's not much news in today's paper, _______?

A. isn't it B. are there C. is there D. aren't there

(11) A: Isn't your uncle an engineer?

B: _______.

A. No, he isn't. B. No, he is. C. Yes, he isn't. D. Yes, he does.

(12) _______ we have today!

A. A fine weather B. What a fine weather C. How a fine weather D. What fine weather

(13) It's a fine day. Let's go fishing, _______?

A. won't we B. will we C. don't we D. shall we

(14) A: Please don't make a noise.

B: _______. I'll be as quiet as a mouse.

A. Yes, I won't B. No, I won't C. No, I will D.Yes, I will

(15) Be sure to write to us, _______?

A. will you B. aren't you C. can you D. mustn't you

(16) A: Do you think it's going to rain over the weekend?

B: _______.

A. I don't believe B. I don't believe it C. I believe not so D. I believe not

(17) I don't think she will agree with us, _______?

A. will she B. won't she C. don't you D. do you

(18) You and I could hardly work together, _______?

A. could you B. couldn't I C. couldn't we D. could we

(19) Sally's never seen a play in the Shanghai Grand Theatre, _______?

A. hasn't she B. has she C. isn't she D. is she

(20) _______ a strange plant! I've never seen it before.

A. Which B. What C. How D. Whether

(21) A: I didn't ask for the name list. Why _______ on my desk?

B: I put it there just now in case you needed it.

A. does it land B. has it landed C. will it land D. had it landed

(22) George said that he would come to school to see me the next day, but he _______.

A. wouldn't B. didn't C. hasn't D. hadn't

(23) ________ at the door before you enter my room, please.

A. Knock   B. Knocking   C. Knocked   D. To knock

(24) There is little doubt in your mind that he is innocent, _______?

A. is there   B. isn't there   C. is he   D. isn't he

第十九章　时态

在这一章中，我们将学习英语中所有时态的常用用法。

1.　现在一般时[①]

（1）表示现在的情况或状态。	➢ He loves classical music. 他喜欢古典音乐。 ➢ She is in the classroom. 她现在在教室里[②]。
（2）表示现阶段经常发生或反复发生的动作[③]。	➢ He always takes a walk after supper. 晚饭后他总是散散步。 ➢ It seldom snows here. 这里很少下雪。 ➢ He doesn't smoke. 他不抽烟。
（3）表示科学事实、客观真理、格言以及其他不受时间限制的客观存在。	➢ The sun rises in the east and sets in the west. 太阳从东方升起在西方落下。 ➢ Metal expands when heated. 金属加热后会膨胀。 ➢ Actions speak louder than words. 行动胜于语言。
（4）可以用来表示一个按规定、计划或按时刻表安排要发生的事情。句子中一般都有一个表示未来时间的词语。通常用来表示学期什么时候要开学、结束；飞机、火车、汽车、船只等交通工具什么时候到达、离开等时刻表上已有安排的活动。	➢ Her plane leaves at 9 a.m. tomorrow. 她乘明天上午 9 点的飞机离开。 ➢ School begins the day after tomorrow. 后天开学。 ➢ When does the play begin? 戏几点开始？
（5）在时间或条件从句中，须用现在时表示将来[④]。	➢ If anyone calls tell them I'm not at home. 有人来电话，就说我不在家。 ➢ When your elder sister returns, we will have lunch. 你姐回来了我们就吃午餐。 ➢ We will leave as soon as you are ready[⑤]. 你一准备好我们就动身。 ➢ Whether he agrees or not, I will stay at home. 不管他同意与否，我都会待在家里。
（6）用在以 here, there 开头的句子后，表瞬间动作。	➢ Here comes the bus. 汽车来了。 ➢ There goes the bell. 铃响了。
（7）用来指引道路。	➢ Go down this way, and turn left at the firth crossing. 沿这条路走然后在第一

[①] In general, the present simple expresses events or situations that exist always, usually or habitually.
[②] We also use the present simple in spoken English in phrases such as ***I gather, I hear, I see,*** and ***I understand*** to introduce news that we have heard, read or seen (e.g. on television). Examples:
➢ I gather you're worried about the new job?
➢ The Prince is coming to visit, and I hear he's very rich.
[③] Typical time expressions used are ***always, often, usually, sometimes, ever/never; every day/week*** etc.
[④] We use the present simple in *that-* and *wh-* clauses when both the main clause and the *that- /wh-* clause refer to the future. Examples:
➢ I'm going to make sure (that) you are invited next time.
➢ I'll let you know when she gets here.
If the main clause has a present simple verb (e.g. I expect), then normally we cannot use another present simple verb for the future. Examples:
➢ I expect the rain will stop soon.
➢ I keep reminding myself that I'll be lying on the beach next week.
But after ***hope*** we can use either a present or a future form. Example: I hope you have/you'll have a nice time.
[⑤] Since both the main clause and the subordinate clause are about the future, there is no need to repeat the time information. Examples: *I'll think of you here when I'm lying on the beach next week; Let's wait until the rain has stopped.*

	个交叉路口左拐。
（8）用于体育运动、表演等实况报道中。	➢ Francis slips past, passes the ball to Yao Ming, who jumps, catches and shoots it into the basket. 弗朗西斯穿过去，把球传给姚明，姚明跳起来，接住球投进篮里。 ➢ Now, look, I press the button and turn on the machine. 现在，看，我按下按扭，打开了这台机器。
（9）用于新闻标题或图片说明中。	➢ China Declares Manned Spaceflight Successful. 中国宣布载人航天飞行圆满成功。 ➢ Laura Bush Arrives in Moscow. 劳拉•布什抵达莫斯科。
（10）用于告诫或劝说。	➢ You mind your own business. 你不要管闲事！ ➢ If he does that again, he goes to prison. 如果他再那样的话，他就会进监狱的。
（11）此外还用于章节标题、讲述书面材料内容、介绍剧情、描述舞台动作、故事读物中戏剧性的描绘等。	➢ I've just got a letter from Helen. She says she's coming to India next week. 我刚收到海伦的一封信，她说下星期要来印度。

2. 过去一般时

（1）表示一个过去发生的动作或存在的状态（常与表示确切过去时间的词、短语等连用）。	➢ He arrived only yesterday. 他昨天刚到。 ➢ I was very busy lash Friday[①]. 上星期五我非常忙。
（2）表示过去经常或反复发生的动作。	➢ He always went to class last. 他总是最后一个到教室的。 ★表示过去的习惯性动作，除了用过去式外，还可以用 used to 或 would 来表示。如： ➢ You used to smoke a pipe, didn't you? 你过去一向是抽烟斗的，对不对？ *"used to+动词原形"表示"过去经常"而现在已经停止的习惯动作。 ➢ He would sit for hours doing nothing. 过去他常常一坐几个钟头什么事也不做。

3. 将来一般时

主要用法：表示将来某个时间要发生的动作，事情或存在的状态。如：

- ➢ The snow will stop soon. 雪很快就要停了。
- ➢ Tomorrow will be Friday. 明天就是星期五。
- ➢ We shall not know the results until next week. 我们下星期才能知道结果。
- ➢ You'll be in time if you hurry. 你要是快一点儿就能来得及。

4. 过去将来一般时

主要用法：过去将来一般时表示从过去的某一时间来看将来要发生的动作或呈现的状态，常用于宾语从句（即名词性从句作宾语）和间接引语中。

① In some contexts the choice of present or past depends on the speaker's attitude.
- ➢ Have you a moment? I want to ask you something.
- ➢ Have you a moment? I wanted to ask you something. *Here the present tense is more direct. The past tense is more distant. It makes the request more tentative and so more polite.

- The sun was going down and it would soon be dark. 夕阳西下，天很快就要黑了。
- She told us that she would not go with us, if it rained. 她告诉我们，如果下雨的话，她就不和我们一起去了。
- I estimated that I should finish in ten days. 我估计我十天能完成。
- They rang to say they would be with us by ten o'clock but then their flight was canceled. 他们打电话说他们会在十点之前和我们会和，但后来他们的航班被取消了。

5. 现在进行时

（1）表示现在正在进行的动作（常与 now，at the moment 等连用）。	➢ I am writing now. 我正在写字。 ➢ He is walking in the park[①]. 他正在公园散步。
（2）表示现阶段正在进行的动作（说话时动作不一定进行，常与 recently，these days 等连用）[②]。	➢ I am writing a new book recently. 我最近正在新一本新书。 ➢ They are planting trees these days. 这几天他们正在种树。
（3）表示按计划、安排即将发生的动作（句中多有一个表示未来时间的词语）。	➢ She is leaving for Beijing tomorrow. 她明天去北京。 ➢ They're getting married next month. 他们下月结婚。
（4）表示经常性的动作，常和 always，constantly，forever 这类副词连用，表示厌烦、赞美等情绪。	➢ She's constantly complaining. 她不停地抱怨。 ➢ Why are you always biting your nails? 你为什么老是咬指甲？ ➢ He is forever thinking of doing more for the students. 他总是想着为学生多做些事情。
（5）表示某一具体动作或心理状态的发展过程。	➢ The house is falling down. 房子正在倒下。 ➢ The weather is changing for the better. 天气慢慢转好了。 ➢ I'm forgetting my English. 我的英语开始忘了。 ➢ Food is costing more. 食品贵了起来。
（6）用在戏剧性的描述中，表示过去的动作，使描写更生动。	➢ Here is this Scotsman，you see，and he is walking through the jungle when he meets a gorilla. 这里，你瞧，是一个苏格兰人。当他在丛林中穿行时碰到一只大猩猩。
（7）be 动词的进行时态：be 动词一般不用于进行时态。但有时可用"am, is, are + being +形容词"结构表示暂时或故意如此。	➢ The boy is being naughty. 这孩子有点儿淘气。 ➢ I don't think you are being fair. 我认为你不公平。 ➢ He is being modest. 他现在很谦虚。 ➢ 比较：You are not polite. 你不讲礼貌。（一贯如此）You are not being polite. 你可有点儿不礼貌了。（暂时的现象）[③]。

[①] When we tell a story or joke we often describe the main events using the present (or past) simple and longer, background events using the present (or past) continuous. Example:She goes (or went) up to this man and looks (or looked) straight into his eyes. She's carrying (or was carrying) a bag full of shopping.

[②] We can use the present continuous or the present simple to describe something that we regularly do at a particular time.
Compare:
- We usually watch the news on TV at 9.00. (= we start watching at 9.00)
- We're usually watching the news on TV at 9.00. (= we're already watching at 9.00)

[③] Compare these two sentences：
- You're being stupid. (behaviour for a time)
- You're stupid. (permanent quality)

We use the present continuous to imply that a situation is or may be temporary.
Compare:
- Banks lend money to make a profit, (this is what usually happens)
- Banks are lending more money (these days) to encourage businesses to expand, (implies a temporary arrangement)
- She teaches Maths in a school in Bonn, (a permanent arrangement)
- She's teaching Maths in a school in Bonn, (implies that this is not, or may not be, permanent)

6. 过去进行时

（1）表示过去某时正在进行的动作。	➢ I was writing now. 我那时正在写字。 ➢ He was running. 他那时正在跑。
（2）表示过去某阶段正在进行的动作。	➢ We were repairing the house last summer. 去年夏天我们正在修理这座房子。
（3）表示过去某种习惯性动作（一般是阶段性的、暂时性的。）	➢ I was getting up at six o'clock every day that week. 我那一周里每天都是六点钟起床。
（4）表示过去一种重复的动作，带有"厌恶"、"赞叹"等感情色彩。	➢ John was always coming to school late. 约翰上学总是迟到。 ➢ Lei Feng was always doing good deeds for the people. 雷锋总是为人民做好事。
（5）表示过去将来时间里的动作。	➢ They were leaving two days later. 他们二天后离开。

7. 将来进行时

（1）表示将来某一时刻或时段里正在进行的动作。	➢ What will he be doing this time tomorrow morning? 她明天早上的这个时候会正在做什么？ ➢ He will be sleeping when we arrive.
（2）表示安排要做的事或预计会发生的事[1]。	➢ The bus will be arriving at one o' clock. 公汽将在一点到。 ➢ I'll be seeing you tomorrow. 我明天会见到你的。 ➢ They won't be coming to the party this evening. 他们今晚不会来参加聚会。

8. 过去将来进行时

主要用法：其用法与现在进行时相似，只是时间向过去将来推移了，表示从过去观看将来某时会正在进行的动作。

➢ I asked him what he would be doing that night. 我问他那天晚上他将会干什么。

9. 现在完成时

主要用法[2][3]：现在完成时所表示的意义都与现在时间有联系，因此都不能与表示确定的过去时间的连用。这是现在完成体用法上一条重要的规则。但是，当表示过去时间是由 since 引导时，就不在此限。如：

➢ I have known him since 1960. 自 1960 年以来我就认识他了。

➢ Where have you been since I last saw you? 自从我上次见到你以后，你到哪儿去了？

其具体常用用法见下表：

（1）已完成用法：是指动作发生在说话之前某个没有	➢ She has spent all of her money. *隐含的意义：现在她没钱花了。

[1] We can often use either the future continuous or the present continuous when we talk about planned activities or events in the future. Examples:

➢ We will be leaving / are leaving for Istanbul at 7.00 in the evening.

➢ Professor Hodge will be giving / is giving the first presentation at the conference.

[2] 章振邦《新编英语语法教程》第二版，p190.

[3] The present perfect expresses the idea that something happened before now, at an unspecified time in the past. The exact time it happened is not important. If there is a specific mention of time,the past simple is used. The adverbs *ever*,*never*, *already*, *yet*, *still*, and *just* are frequently used with the present perfect.

明确说出的过去时间（常指最近的过去时间），现在已经完成了，对现在造成了影响。通常不与表示一段时间的词或短语连用。	➢ I've washed my car. 我洗过车了。*隐含的意义：因此很干净。 ➢ I have just locked the door. 我刚锁了门。*隐含的意义：目前门还锁着。 ➢ He has gone to Beijing[1]. 他已经去北京了。 ➢ My ceiling has fallen in and the kitchen is flooded[2]. 我的天花板脱落了，厨房被淹了。
（2）未完成用法：是指动作从过去某时开始继续到现在，可能继续下去，也可能刚刚结束。通常要与表示一段时间的词或短语连用。	➢ Tom has lived here since 2006. *隐含的意义：汤姆自 2006 年以来住在这里，至今还住在这里并将继续住这里，根据上下文也可能理解为刚刚搬走。 ➢ The strike has continued for several weeks[3]. *隐含的意义：罢工已持续了几个星期，至今还在进行，根据上下文也可能理解为刚刚结束。
（3）表示从过去某个时间直到现在的这个时间范围内不断重复发生的动作，并且这个不断重复的动作有可能继续下去，也有可能到现在就结束。	➢ I've been to New York three times so far. 至今我已到纽约去过三次。 ➢ She has always gone to work by bus. 她一向坐公交上班。

现在完成时与过去一般时的区别：现在完成时强调对现在的影响，而过去一般时强调过去发生或存在的单纯事实，如：

- I have watered the flowers. 我已经给花浇水了。*现在不用再浇了。
- I watered the flowers. 我给花浇了水。*强调浇水这件事发生在过去。

10. 过去完成时

主要用法：其用法与现在完成时相似，只是时间向过去推移了，如：

- Had they left before you got there? 你到达那里时他们已经离开了吗?
- He said that he had been in China for over ten years. 他说他在中国已经有十多年了。
- She said that she had often done to Paris on business[4]. 她说她经常出差去巴黎。

11. 将来完成时

主要用法：其用法与现在完成时相似，只是时间向将来推移了，如：

- They will have finished by the time we arrive. 他们会在我们到那里的时候完成的。

---

[1] Another example: *He has been to Beijing. (He has now come back) *Gone* means "gone and still away". *Been* means "gone and come back".
We say: It's the first/second,etc time something has happened. Examples: It's the first time he has driven a car; This is the second time this has happened.

[2] In news reports, you will often read or hear events introduced with the present perfect, and then the past simple is used to give the details. Example: The film star Jim Cooper has died of cancer. He was 68and lived in Texas.

[3] We can use the present perfect with today / this morning / this year etc. when these periods are not finished at the time of speaking. When the time is over, we use the past simple. Examples:

- It has been windy this morning. (The morning is not yet over.)
- It was windy this morning. (It is afternoon or evening.)
- I didn't shave today. (= the usual time has passed; suggests I will not shave today)
- I haven't shaved today. (= today is not finished; I may shave later or may not)

[4] To say that someone finished one action and then did something else, we use either *when... had done* or *after... did/had done.* Examples:

- When Miranda had written the letter, she went out to post it.
- After Miranda wrote/had written the letter, she went out to post it

Sometimes the choice of past simple or past perfect can make a difference to the meaning. Examples:

- When the boss arrived, the meeting began. (The boss arrived and then the meeting began.)
- When the boss arrived, the meeting had begun. (The meeting began before the boss arrived.)
- When Max spoke, Miranda put the phone down. (= When Max started speaking...)
- When Max had spoken, Miranda put the phone down. (= When Max finished speaking...)

- She will have arrived at the cinema before the film starts. 在电影放映之前她就会到达电影院了。
- They will have stayed here for five years by the end of this week. 到本周末他们就在这里呆了五年了。

12. 过去将来完成时

其用法与现在完成时相似，只是时间向过去将来推移了。

13. 现在完成进行时

（1）指动作始于说话之前某个过去时间，现在还在进行中，有可能继续（取决于上下文）。	➢ I have been washing the blankets since 1 PM. 自下午 1 点以来，我一直在洗毯子。 ➢ I have been writing a book recently. 最近我一直在写一本书。 ➢ I has been raining all day. 今天一整天一直下雨。 ➢ We've been discussing the proposals for a number of years. 多年来，我们一直在讨论这些提案。 ➢ How long have you been waiting for me[①]? 你等我多久了？
（2）表示一直到说话为止的一段时间内一再重复的动作，有可能继续（取决于上下文）。	➢ She has been writing letters to the school. 最近她一直在给这所学校写信。 ➢ People have been phoning me all day. 今天整天一直有人给我打电话。 ➢ I have been waking up in the night a lot. I think I'll see the doctor. 最近我经常在夜里醒来，我想我应该看一下医生。
（3）表示刚刚结束的动作，且产生了影响。	➢ You are out of breath. --Yes, I've been running. 你上气不接下气。是啊，我刚在跑步。 ➢ Your eyes are red -- have you been crying? 你眼睛红了，你刚才在哭吗？ ➢ I must just go and wash. I have been sweeping the dead leaves away in the back yard[②]. 我必须得去洗洗。刚我一直在扫完后院的枯叶。

14. 过去完成进行时

主要用法：其用法与现在完成进行时相似，只是时间向过去推移了。

- I'd been working hard, so I felt that I deserved a holiday. 我一直在努力工作，所以我觉得我应该得到一个假期。
- They had been expecting the news for some time. 他们期待这个消息已经有一段时间了。
- She had been wearing high-heeled shoes, and her feet hurt. 她一直穿着高跟鞋，感到脚有些痛了。
- Bill had been saving since Christmas to buy a new bike. 比尔自圣诞节以来一直在存钱买一辆新自行车。

15. 将来完成进行时

主要用法：其用法与现在完成进行时相似，只是时间向将来推移了。

[①] We use both the present perfect continuous and the present perfect to talk about something that started in the past and which affects the situation that exists now. The difference is that the present perfect continuous focuses on the activity or event which may or may not be finished. The present perfect, however, focuses on the effect of the activity or event, or the fact that something has been achieved. Sometimes the difference between them is simply one of emphasis. Examples:

- I've been following their discussions with great interest.(Emphasizes the activity: my following their discussions)
- I've followed their discussions with great interest. (Emphasizes the result: I may now react to what was said or decided)

[②] Compare the present perfect continuous and the present perfect for a single action.
Period of time: I've been washing the car. I'm rather wet.
Complete action: I've washed the car. It looks a lot cleaner now.
The perfect continuous here focuses on the action going on. The present perfect focuses on the result of the action. The choice depends on how the speaker sees the action.

- On Saturday, we will have been living in this house for a year. 到本周六，我们在这所房子里就住了一年了。
- Next year I will have been working in the company for 30 years. 到明年，我就在这个公司工作 30 年了。
- Henry will have been studying for two hours by the time his friends arrive. 亨利在他的朋友到达时将已经学习了两个小时。

16. 过去将来完成进行时

主要用法：其用法与现在完成进行时相似，只是时间向过去将来推移了。

17. 将来/过去将来的的几种表示方法汇总

将来	过去将来
（1）shall/will：表单纯将来，如： ➢ It will rain tomorrow. 明天会下雨。 ➢ You'll be in time if you hurry. 你要是快一点儿就能来得及。	should/would：用法和 shall/will 一样，只是时间移到了过去将来。
（2）am/is/are+going to①： 1）打算做某事，如： ➢ We're going to spend our holidays in Wales this year. 今年我们打算到威尔士度假。 2）用以表示某事物即将发生或很可能发生（根据现有情况预见），如： ➢ I'm going to be twenty next month. 下个月我就二十岁了。 ➢ I'm going to tell you a story. 我来给你讲个故事。 ➢ Look at those black clouds; there's going to be a storm. 瞧那些乌云，眼看 要有暴风雨了。	was/were+going to: 用法和 am/is/are+going to 一样，只是时间移到了过去将来。
（3）现在进行时：表示按计划、安排即将发生的动作，如： ➢ When are you starting? 你什么时候动身？ ➢ What are you doing next Sunday? 下星期你打算干什么？ ★现在进行时和 be going to 都可以表示决定做某事，所以在表达此种意义时，通常可以通用如： ➢ He is going to leave=He is leaving. （他要走了） ★用现在进行时表示将来时间有时还可带有其它情态意义②，如： ➢ I am not sitting on that hard seat (=I won't sit on that hard seat). （我不想坐在那张硬座上） ➢ You are not staying here any longer (=I won't allow you to sit here any longer). （你不许再呆在这里了）	过去进行时：用法和用现在进行时一样，只是时间移动到了过去将来。

① 章振邦《新编英语语法教程》第二版的 210 页提到：既然“will/shall+不定式”和“be going to+不定式”这两种结构都可表示“意图”，因此有时就可以互换使用，如：I won't tell him about it→I am not going to tell him about it. *但是，用 be going to 表示的“意图”通常是事先经过考虑的，而“will/shall+不定式”所表示的“意图”，则是说话时刻临时想到的，因此在某些语境中，这两种结构又不可以交替使用。试比较：

1）

A：Why are you taking down all the pictures?

B：I am going to repaper the room. （这里不用用 will）

2）

A：What a terribly heavy box!

B：I'll help you to carry it. （在这里不用 am going to help）

上面的说话显然是正确的，但在本书中，作者认为上面例子中的 will 是情态动词，而不是助动词，因为其含有了实际意义，即表达了意图。

② 章振邦《新编英语语法教程》第二版，p212.

（4）am/is/are+不定式（常用于正式文体中）： 1）表示安计划、安排即将发生的动作，如： They are to be married. 他们打算结婚。 2）表示命令、规定、禁止或可能性等，如： ➢ I am to (ie I have been told to) inform you that... 我有义务（我受人之托）通知你。（表义务） ➢ You are to report (ie must, should report) to the police. 你应该报警。（表建议） ➢ The book was not to be (ie could not be) found. 那本书找不到了。（表可能性） ➢ He was never to see his wife again, ie Although he did not know it at the time, he did not see her again. 他从那以后就再也见不到他的妻子了。（表注定） ➢ If I were to tell you/Were I to tell you that I killed him, would you believe me? 假如我对你说是我杀死了他，你相信吗？（仅用 were 这一形式，表示假设）	was/were+不定式：用法和 am/is/are+不定式一样，只是时间移动到了过去将来。
（5）现在一般时： 1）在条件或时间从句中常用现在一般时表将来，如： ➢ If anyone calls，tell them I'm not at home. 有人来电话，就说我不在家。 ➢ I'll give it to you after I return. 我回来后会将它给你。 ➢ It may be many years before we meet again. 大概要过许多年我们才能再见。 2）表示按规定、时间表、计划或安排要发生的动作[①]，如： ➢ She goes to London next week. 她下周去伦敦。 ➢ The train leaves at 8 tomorrow morning. 火车明早 8 点出发。	过去一般时：用法和过去一般时一样，只是时间移动到了过去将来。

18. 时态呼应

某些从句里的动词时态与主句里的动词时态相呼应的规律，叫做时态呼应（也叫时态的一致）（严格意义上来说是“时”的一致），具体用法见下表（只要注意下面几种情况就可以，其它的按意思运用相应的时态）。

主句的时	宾语从句	例子
过去/过去将来	（1）如果从句表达的是客观真理、客观事实用现在时。	➢ Long ago people didn't know that the earth moves around the sun. 很久以前人们不知道地球绕着太阳转。 ➢ The teacher said that practice makes perfect. 老师说熟能生巧。
	（2）如果从句的谓语含有情态动词，将其变成相应的过去式（没有过去式的则不变）。	➢ He said he could swim. 他说他会游泳。 ➢ Tom said she might come. 汤姆说她可能会来。
	（3）否则按意思运用相应的时态。	➢ He said he would come tomorrow. 他说他明天来。*说话时已过了明天。 ➢ He said he will come tomorrow. 他说他明天来。*说话时是明天之前，如当天晚上。 ➢ He said he was a teacher. 他说他是个老师。*现在已不当老师。 ➢ He said he is a teacher. 他说他是个老师。*现在还是老师。 ➢ Somebody told me you are a writer. 有人告诉我你是个作家。*现在还是作家。

① 章振邦《新编英语语法教程》第二版，p213：表示将来时间，一般现在时和现在进行体都常与表示位置移动的动词连用，而且都有按计划、安排的含义。但一般现在时所暗示的计划比较客观，因而更具有不可变易性，而而用一般现在时表示将来在口气上也比用现在进行体更为正式。

19. 练习

单选：选择最合适的答案。

(1) Every day, too much water _______ in our school.

A. is wasted　　B. wastes　　C. was wasted　　D. wasted

(2) Three bridges _______ over the river five years ago.

A. built　　B. build　　C. were built　　D. are built

(3) There _______ a football match on TV this evening.

A. will have　　B. is going to be　　C. has　　D. is going to have

(4) A: Hurry up! We're all waiting for you.

B: I _______ for an important phone call. Go without me.

A. wait　　B. was waiting　　C. am waiting　　D. waited

(5) A: Did you go to Linda's birthday party, Jill?

B: No. I _______.

A. didn't invite　　B. wasn't invited　　C. am not invited　　D. haven't invited

(6) If everyone _______ the traffic rules, there will be fewer accidents on the road.

A. follows　　B. follow　　C. breaks　　D. break

(7) Robert turned on the computer and _______ an e-mail to his friend.

A. sent　　B. send　　C. sends　　D. will send

(8) Betty can play the piece of music very well because she _______ many times.

A. practiced　　B. will practice　　C. is practicing　　D. has practiced

(9) By the end of last week, she _______ in the west of China for two months helping the homeless children.

A. will stay　　B. has stayed　　C. would stay　　D. had stayed

(10) Susan and Lily _______ tomatoes and other vegetables on the farm this time yesterday.

A. pick　　B. are picking　　C. will pick　　D. were picking

(11) Aunt Lucy will tell us something about her trip to Australia when she _______ back.

A. came　　B. comes　　C. would come　　D. will come

(12) The house belongs to my aunt but she _______ here any more.

A. hasn't lived　　B. didn't live　　C. hadn't lived　　D. doesn't live

(13) The office phones are dirty and they _______ next week

A. will clean　　B. will be cleaned　　C. are cleaning　　D. are cleaned

(14) Be quiet! I _______ my homework.

A. am doing　　B. have done　　C. do　　D. did

(15) A new hospital _______ in my town next year.

A. builds　　B. built　　C. is built　　D. will be built

(16) A: What do you often do at weekends?

B: I often _______ my grandparents.

A. visit　　B. visited　　C. have visited　　D. will visit

(17) He _______ in this factory for 20 years already.

A. will work　　B. works　　C. has worked　　D. is working

(18) He _______ football regularly for many years when he was young.

A. was playing　　B. played　　C. has played　　D. had played

(19) They became friends again that day. Until then, they _______ to each other for nearly two years.

A. didn't speak B. hadn't spoken C. haven't spoken D. haven't been speaking

(20) Judy is going to marry the sailor she _______ in Rome last year.

A. meets B. met C. has met D. would meet

(21) A: Have you read book called *Waiting for Anya?*

B: Who _______ it?

A. writes B. has written C. wrote D. had written

(22) A: I'm sure Andrew will win the first prize in the final.

B: I think so. He _______ for it for months.

A. is preparing B. was preparing C. had been preparing D. has been preparing

(23) I like these English songs and they _______ many times on the radio.

A. taught B. have taught C. are taught D. have been taught

(24) A: Tom, you didn't come to the party last night?

B: I _______, but I suddenly remembered I had homework to do.

A. had to B. didn't C. was going to D. wouldn't

(25) A：What were you doing when we were playing basketball yesterday afternoon?

B：I _______ the classroom.

A. was cleaning B. have cleaned C. will clean D. clean

(26) I _______ tennis with my cousin every day when I was in America.

A. play B. played C. had played D. has played

(27) We _______ for a picnic if it _______ rain this Sunday.

A. go, doesn't B. will go, won't C. will go, doesn't D. go, won't

(28) A: Could I use your car tomorrow morning?

B: Sure. I _______ a report at home.

A. will be writing B. will have written C. have written D. have been writing

(29) When I talked with my grandma on the phone, she sounded weak, but by the time we _______ up, her voice had been full of life.

A. were hanging B. had hung C. hung D. would hang

(30) A：Ann is in hospital.

B：Oh, really? I _______ know. I _______ go and visit her.

A. didn't; am going to B. don't; would C. don't; will D. didn't; will

(31) A：Hi, Terry, can I use your computer for a while this afternoon?

B：Sorry. _______ .

A. It' s repaired B. It has been repaired C. It's being repaired D. It had been repaired

(32) Progress _______ so far very good and we are sure that the work will be finished on time.

A. was B. had been C. has been D. will be

(33) Mary went to the box office at lunch time, but all the tickets _______ out.

A. would sell B. had sold C. have sold D. was selling

(34) Professor Williams keeps telling his students that the future _______ to the well-educated.

A. belongs B. is belonged C. is belonging D. will be belonged

(35) A: You speak very good French !

B：Thanks. I _______ French in Sichuan University for four years.

A. studied B. study C. was studying D. had studied

(36) Over the past decades, sea ice _______ in the Arctic as a result of global warming.

A. had decreased B. decreased C. has been decreasing D. is decreasing

(37) If you plant watermelon seeds in the spring, you _______ fresh watermelon in the fall.

A. eat B. would cat C. have eaten D. will be eating

(38) A: Have you finished reading Jane Eyre?

B: No, I _______ my homework all day yesterday.

A . was doing B . would do C . had done D . do

(39) When you are home, give a call to let me know you _______ safely.

A. are arriving B. have arrived C. had arrived D. will arrive

(40) I walked slowly through the market, where people _______ all kinds of fruits and vegetables. I studied the prices carefully and bought what I needed.

A. sell B. were selling C. had sold D. have sold

(41) I'm tired out. I _______ all afternoon and I don't seem to have finished anything.

A. shopped B. have shopped C. had shopped D. have been shopping

(42) I _______ all the cooking for my family, but recently I've been too busy to do it.

A. will do B. do C. am doing D. had done

(43) Linda, make sure the tables _______ before the guests arrive.

A. be set B. set C. are set D. are setting

(44) Excuse me. I _______ I was blocking your way.

A. didn't realize B. don't realize C. haven't realized D. wasn't realizing

(45) Did you predict that many students _______ up for the dance competition?

A. would sign B. signed C. have signed D. had signed

(46) Planing so far ahead _______ no sense--so many thing will have changed by next year.

A. made B. is making C. makes D. has made

(47) By the time Jack returned home from England, his son _______ from college.

A. graduated B. has graduated C. had been D. had graduated

(48) A: I hear that Jason is planning to buy a car.

B: I know. By next month, he _______ enough for a used one.

A. will have saved B. will be saving C. has saved D. saves

(49) I feel so excited! At this time tomorrow morning I _______ to Shanghai.

A. will be flying B. will fly C. have been flying D. have flown

(50) "The moment _____soon," he thought to himself, waiting nervously.

A. came B. has tome C. was coming D. is coming

(51) All the scientific evidence _______ that increasing use of chemicals in farming _______ damaging our health.

A. show; are B. shows; are C. show; is D. shows; is

(52) In order to find the missing child, villagers _______ all they can over the past five hours.

A. did B. do C. had done D. have been doing

(53) After school we went to the reading-room to do some reading, only to be told that it _______.

A. was decorated B. had decorated

C. had been decorating D. was being decorated

(54) We _______ very early so we packed the night before.

A. leave B. had left C. were leaving D. have left

(55) We are confident that the environment _______ by our further efforts to reduce pollution.

A. had been improved B. will be improved

C. is improved D. was improved

第二十章　主谓一致

1.　主谓一致三原则

主谓一致主要包含两个方面，即 **1）主语和谓语在数上的一致；2）主语和谓语在人称上的一致**[①]**。**

1) **语法一致原则：**主语为单数形式，谓语动词也用单数形式；主语为复数形式，谓语动词也用复数形式。不可数名词作主语时，谓语动词用单数，如：

- The boy likes English. 那个男孩喜欢英语。
- I am swimming. 我正在游泳。
- You are a good guy. 你是个好人。
- She is watching TV. 她在看电视。
- The students of our class play football well. 我们班学生球踢得不错。
- They are drinking wine. 他们在喝酒。

2) **意义一致原则：**主语形式虽为单数，但意义为复数，谓语动词用复数；主语形式为复数，而意义为单数，谓语动词用单数。如：

- My family are having dinner now. 我们家人现在在吃饭。*family 指家中全体成员，强调个体，有复数含义。
- His family has moved into the new house. 他家已经搬到新房子里去了。*family 指整个家，强调整体，用作单数。
- Two hours is enough. 两小时就够了。*two hours 指一个时间段，强调整体，看作单数。
- The crowd were surrounding the government official. 人群包围了这位政府官员。

3) **就近一致原则：**这一原则是指，谓语动词的人称和数常常与谓语最近的作主语的词语保持一致。总的来说，在由 not only...but also...，not just...but...，or, either...or..., neither...nor...等连接主语的句子中及在 there be 句型中，遵循就近原则，如：

- There is **a book** and two pencils on the desk. 桌子上有一支钢笔和两支铅笔。
- Neither my friends nor **I** was able to persuade him to accept our advice. 我和我的朋友都说服不他接受我们的建议。

总结：通过学习原则 1 和原则 2 后我们发现，其实是主语意思（而不是形式）上的单/复数概念决定了其谓语的形式[②]**，即如果主语的意思表单数，则其谓语采用单数形式；反之则采用复数形式**[③]**。而原则 3 所说的是一些特例（也可以说是一个与原则 1、2 自相矛盾的原则**[④]**），这需要我们多查词典，多记忆。**

2.　主谓一致三原则的具体运用

主谓一致三原则的具体运用详见下表：

常见具体情况	例句
（1）"many a +名词"作主语时，谓语动词常用单数。	➢ Many a famous pop star has been ruined by drugs. 很多著名的流行音乐歌星都因使用毒品而毁了自己。
（2）"more than one +名词"作主语时，谓语动词	➢ More than one computer has been sold 已出售的电脑不止一台。

[①] 其实这种一致是一种残余下来的习惯在大多数时候是没有意义的，但既然是习惯我们只好遵守。
[②] 但 you（你）除外，因为其为单数时，谓语还是要用复数形式。
[③] 其实主谓一致只要理解这一点就够了。（不过还需要记忆原则 3 这个错误原则）
[④] 同时也进一步说明了主谓一致原则是多么无聊的一个原则。

常用单数。	
（3）all 作主语时根据其代表的具体事物确定单复数。	➢ All is dependent on your decision. 一切取决于你的决定。 ➢ All are agreed. 全体赞成。
（4）"all of, half of, the rest of, most of, 及百分数或分数+of 等后接名词"作主语时，谓语动词形式根据 of 后的名词而定。	➢ Half of **his work is** still undone. 他的工作有一半还没做。 ➢ Half of the **plums are** rotten. 半数的李子腐烂了。
（5）what 引导的主语从句，谓语动词可视表语而定：表语是单数名词时，动词用单数，相反，则用复数。*what [the thing(s) that]	➢ What they want to get are **a number of good books.**他们想得到的是大量的好书。 ➢ What they want is **a good English book.** 他们想要的是一本好的英语书籍。
（6）and 连接的两个单数名词前若用 each, every 或 no 修饰，该名词短语作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式。	➢ No book and no pen is found in the schoolbag. 书包里没有书和钢笔。
（7）each 作主语的同位语时，谓语动词由主语来决定，与 each 无关。	➢ We each have a different point of view. 我们每个人都有不同的观点。
（8）the following 作主语时，谓语动词的数与后面名词的数保持一致。	➢ The following is of **the greatest importance.** 下面一点最为重要。 ➢ The following are **extracts from the original article.** 下面是原文的节选。
（9）由两个对应部分组成一体的名词（形式上为复数，如 trousers, shoes，shorts，scissors，scales 等）作主语时，前面若有"一条"、"一副"之类的单位词，动词用单数；若没有单位词或单位词是复数，则谓语动词用复数。	➢ These trousers cost $30 a pair. 这种裤子 30 美元一条。 ➢ A pair of shoes has been sold. 卖了一双鞋。 ➢ Two more pairs of trousers are dirty. 另外两条裤子脏了。
（10）"one and a half +名词"作主语时，谓语动词可用单数也可以用复数。	➢ One and a half hours is / are allowed for the exam. 考试时间为一个半小时。

3. 练习

单选：选择最合适的答案。

(1) The traffic is moving very slowly as so many cars _______ on their way back to Shanghai.
A. am B. is C. are D. be

(2) A: What _______ the number of the girls in your class?
B: About twenty.
A. is B. am C. are D. be

(3) Nobody in our class but Tom and I _______ that our monitor is going abroad for further education.
A. know B. am to know C. have known D. knows

(4) Three-fourths of the surface of the earth _______ sea.
A. is B. are C. were D. has been

(5) Not only I but also Jane and Mary _______ tired of having one examination after another.
A. is B. are C. am D. be

(6) Everyone in our class _______ English.
A. plays B. play C. likes D. like

(7) A set of keys _______ on the desk. Some boxes _______ on the desk, too.
A. are, are B. is, are C. is, is D. is, am

(8) There _______ an exercise book and three books on the teacher's desk.

A. be B. have C. is D. are

(9) Mr. Li, with his wife and son, often _______ to Harbin for skiing in winter.

A. go B. went C. going D. goes

(10) Only one of the answers _______ right. Either he or I _______ right.

A. are; am B. is; am C. are; are D. am; are

(11) Dr. Smith as well as his daughters, _______ visit Beijing this summer.

A. is going to B. are going to C. was going to D. were going to

(12) About 6% of the population in New Zealand _______ Asians.

A. are B. is C. make up D. are from

(13) The _______ of the students in our class _______ girls.

A. majority, are B. most, are C. majorities, are D. majority, is

(14) It is reported that many a new house _______ at present in the disaster area.

A. are being built B. were being built C. was being built D. is being built

(15) _______ in the earthquake _______ taken to the hospitals in other cities.

A. The injured; were B. The injured; was C. The injuries; were D. The injuries; was

(16) Both rice and wheat _______ grown in our country.

A. is B. are C. was D. were

(17) A poet and artist _______ going to make a speech tomorrow afternoon about Chinese literature.

A. is B. are C. was D. were

(18) _______ of the apple _______ bad and he had to throw it away.

A. Two third; went B. Two thirds; goes C. Two thirds; go D. Two thirds; went

(19) Tony and I _______ good friends.

A. am B. is C. are D. be

(20) A: There _______ lots of information on sports on ESPN.com.

B: But most of it is in English.

A. has B. have C. are D. is

(21) A: Here _______ some books for you, Tom.

B: Thanks a lot.

A. is B. are C. am D. be

(22) _______ have a racing bicycle.

A. Each B. Each of us C. We each D. Every one

(23) One of my teachers _______ an Englishman.

A. is B. are C. do D. does

(24) It is Tom as well as his two friends that _______ for the job.

A. have applied B. have been applied C. has applied D. has been applied

(25) How close parents are to their children _______ a strong influence on the development of the children's characters.

A. having B. had C. has D. have

(26) The newspaper's owner and editor _______ away on holiday.

A. is B. are C. be D. have been

(27) The cattle _______ grazing on the fields.

A. are B. was C. be D. is

(28) How many countries _______ the European Union made up of, do you know?

A. is B. are C. have D. has

(29) Playing football and watching TV _______ both interesting.

A. were B. was C. are D. is

(30) The best means to go there _______ walking.

A. is B. are C. to be D. be

(31) All they need _______ a small piece of land.

A. are B. was C. is D. were

(32) The university estimates that living expenses for international students _______ around $8,450 a year, which _______ a burden for some of them.

A. are; is B. are; are C. is; are D. is; is

(33) Either you or one of your students _______ to attend the meeting that is due tomorrow.

A. are B. is C. have D. be

(34) The number of foreign students attending Chinese universities _______ rising steadily since1990.

A. is B. are C. has been D. have been

(35) The teacher together with the students _______ discussing Reading Skills that _______ newly published in America.

A. are; were B. is; were C. are; was D. is; was

(36) Listening to loud music at rock concerts _______ caused hearing loss in some teenagers.

A. is B. are C. has D. have

(37) Such poets as Shakespeare _______ widely read, of whose works, however, some _______ difficult to understand.

A. are; are B. is; is C. are; is D. is; are

第二十一章　语气

语气是英语中一个比较复杂的概念，之所以复杂是因为语气在谓语中和语态、态、时、人称和数结合在一起，这使得很多时候人们甚至感觉不到语气的存在。我们知道“时”反映的是动作发生的时间；“态”反映的是动作的状态，那么究竟什么是语气呢？

简单点说，语气表示的是说话者对所说事件的看法。英语中共有三种语气：陈述语气、祈使语气和虚拟语气。

1.　陈述语气

根据英语的表达习惯，如果说话者认为其所说的是一个实事、一个确定要发生的事件（相当于事实）或是一个发生的可能性极强的事件（相当于事实）时，这时使用陈述语气，对谓语动词不再作任何改变，如：

- Mary is a teacher. 玛丽是个老师。
- I am going to China next month. 我下个月去中国。
- They are on holiday in the Lake District. 他们在英格兰湖区度假。
- If anyone calls tell them I'm not at home. 有人来电话，就说我不在家。

2.　祈使语气

祈使语气表示所说的话是命令或请求。用祈使语气的句子的主语通常是第二人称，且常省略，句子的谓语用动词原形①，如：

- Come here. 过来。
- Be a good boy. 要做个好孩子。
- Speak more slowly, please. 请讲慢些。
- Don't open the windows. 不要打开窗子。
- Do give me a call. 一定给我打电话。

3.　虚拟语气

如果说话者认为其所说的是一个主观想法【即不是一个实事、是一个发生的可能性极低的事件（相当于一个主观想法）或是一个建议/命令/请求/要求/义务/责任等】时，这时使用虚拟语气，即将谓语动词的时变成过去②（因为复合词 shall 可以表达建议/命令/要求/义务/责任这些意思，所以通常会将 shall 变成过去式 should）。

我们看到其实祈使语气也是一种虚拟语气，不过省略了 should。

总结：简单来说，如果说话者认为其所说的是一个实事、一个确定要发生的事件或是一个发生的可能性极强的事件时，用陈述语气，否则通常用虚拟语气。

1）　**应用虚拟语气的主要情况**

虚拟语气在条件句中的用法：条件句有真实条件句和虚拟条件句两种。真实条件句所表示的假设是极有可能发生的，此时主句不用虚拟语气，如：

- If he doesn't hurry up, he will miss the bus. 如果他不快点，将错过巴士。*真实。
- If he is free, he will ask me to tell stories. 如果他闲的的话，会要求我给他讲故事。*真实。

---

① 因为根据语境，动作发生的时间属于可推知信息，所以没必要通过谓语动词的变化体现出来

② 因为时间不可逆转，所以选择将时变为过去，这样通过将一个事件对象置于一个不可能返回的过去时间中，就表达了主观想法这一信息，因为就当今科技来说，回到过去是不现实的。

而虚拟条件句则表示一种假想、与事实相反或不太可能会发生，此时用虚拟语气，其具体构成方式见下表：

情形	条件句的谓语形式	主句的谓语形式	示例
与现在事实相反	用动词过去式，如果是 be 时多用 were	would/should/could/might+ 动词原型	➢ If I were your teacher, I would criticize you more severely. 如果我是你老师，我会更严厉地批评你。*实事：我不是你老师，自然也不更严厉地批评你。因为 I am your teacher 和 I will criticize you more severely 两个都不是实事所以两者的谓语都采用虚拟语气，且根据英语的习惯，两者的谓语都发生了变化，即其谓语的"时"变成了过去，所以 am 变成了 were，will 变成了 would。**后面的例子都是类似的所以不重复分析了。** ➢ If I knew his telephone number, I would tell you. 如果我知道他的电话号码，我就会告诉你。*事实：我不知道他的电话号码，自然也无法告诉你他的电话号码。 ➢ If there were no air or water, there would be no living things on the earth. 如果没有水和空气，地球上就不会有生物。*事实：地球上既有空气也有水。 ➢ If he were here, he might be able to help. 如果他在这里，他或许会帮忙的。*实事：他没在这。 ➢ If I were a bird, I could fly freely in the sky. 假如我是一只鸟儿，我就能在空中自由飞翔。*实事：我不是一只鸟。 ➢ Even if he were here himself, he should not know what to do. 即使他本人在这，也不知该怎么办。
与过去事实相反	用动词过去完成时 had done	would/should/could/might + have done	➢ If he had got up earlier, he could have caught the train. 假如他早点起来的话，他本来能赶上那趟火车。*实事：他没有早点起来。 ➢ If he had taken my advice, he would not have made such a mistake. 如果他听我的劝告的话，就不会犯这样的错误了。*事实：没有听我的话。 ➢ If you had been more careful, the mistake might have been avoided. 如果你仔细一点， 这个错误是可以避免的。*事实：没有仔细。 ➢ If I had married her, I would have been unhappy. 要是当时我和她结了婚的话，那我将很不幸。*事实：没有和她结婚。 ➢ Even if he had been ill, he would have gone to his office. 即使生了病，他都会去办公室。
在将来不太可能发生	（1）动词过去式 （2）should +动词原型 （3）were + to do	would/should/could/might + 动词原形	➢ If he should come/came here tomorrow, I should/would talk to him. 如果他哪天来这儿的话，我就跟他谈谈。*事实：来的可能性不大。 ➢ If it were to rain tomorrow, the football match would be put off. 如果明天下雨，足球比赛将推迟。*事实：明天下雨的可能性不大。

虚拟语气用于非真实条件句时需要注意几点，详见下表：

情况	示例
（1）有时，虚拟条件句中，结果主句和条件从句的谓语动作若不是同时发生时，虚拟语气的形式应作相应的调整。这种条件句叫错综条件句。	1）从句的动作与过去事实相反，而主句的动作与正在发生的事实不符，如： ➢ If I had worked hard at school, I would be an engineer, too. 如果我在学校学习刻苦的话，我现在也会成为一个工程师了 ➢ If they had informed us, we would not come here now. 如果他们通知过我们的话，我们现在就不会来这里了。 2）从句的动作与现在事实相反，而主句的动作与过去事实不符，如：

	➢ If he were free today, we would have sent him to Beijing. 如果他今天有空的话，我们就已经派他去北京了。 ➢ If he knew her, he would have greeted her. 要是他认识她的话，他肯定会去问候她了。
（2）当虚拟条件句的谓语动词含有 were, should, had 时，if 可以省略，这时条件从句要用倒装语序，即 were, should, had 等词置于句首，这种多用于书面语。	➢ Should he agree to go there, we would send him there. 要是他答应去的话，我们就派他去了。 ➢ Were she here, she would agree with us. 如果她在这儿的话，她会同意我们的。 ➢ Had he learnt about computers, we would have hired him to work here. 如果他懂一些电脑知识的话，我们已经聘用他来这里工作了。
（3）非真实条件句中的条件从句有时不表达出来，只暗含在副词、介词短语、上下文或以其他方式表示出来，这种句子叫做含蓄条件句，在多数情况下，条件会暗含在短语中，如 without…，but for…（要不是因为…）等。	➢ But for his help, we would be working now. 要不是他的帮助，我们还会在工作呢。 ➢ Without your instruction, I would not have made such great progress. 要是没有你的指导，我不会取得如此大的进步。 ➢ We didn't know his telephone number; otherwise we would have telephoned him. 我们不知道他的电话号码，否则我们就会给他打电话。
（4）有时，虚拟条件语气的从句中，主、从句可以省略其中的一个，来表示说话人的一种强烈的感情。	1）省略从句，如： ➢ He would have finished it. 他本该完成了。 ➢ You could have passed this exam. 你本能通过这次考试的。 2）省略主句，如： ➢ If I were at home now. 要是我现 在在家里该多好啊。 ➢ If only I had got it. 要是只有我得到它了该多好啊。

2) 虚拟语气的其它用法

情况	示例
（1）wish 后的宾语从句：动词 wish 后接宾语从句时，从句谓语要用虚拟语气。 若要表示与现在事实相反的愿望，从句谓语用一般过去时或过去进行时（同样 be 动词变成 were）； 若表示与过去相反的愿望，从句谓语用 would / could+have + 过去分词或者过去完成时 had done； 若表示将来没有把握或不太可能实现的愿望，用 would (could)+动词原形。 ★注意如果将 wish 改为过去式 wished，其后 that 从句中的动词形式不变。 ★ 一般 would rather, had rather, would sooner 等之后的宾语从句常表示与客观事实不相符的一种愿望，故也使用虚拟语气。	➢ I wish I were rich. 我恨不得我很富有。 ➢ I wish he wouldn't go out every night. 他要不是每天晚上都出去就好了。 ➢ I wish prices would come down. 我希望物价能降下来。 ➢ I wish the train would come. 我希望火车将会来。 ➢ She wished she had stayed at home. 她懊悔的是她当时要是在家就好了。 ➢ I'd rather you had seen the film yesterday. 我倒想你昨天看过了这场电影。 ➢ I'd rather you were here now. 我倒想你现在在这儿。 ➢ I would rather you came on Sunday. 希望你星期天来 。
（2）表示"命令"后的宾语从句：主要是指 command, order 的宾语从句，从句谓语由"should+动词原形"构成，其中的 should 在美国英语中通常可以省略。	➢ The general director of the project ordered that the work (should) be started at once. 工程总指挥命令立即开始工作。 ➢ He commanded that we (should) attack at once. 他命令我们立即发起进攻。
（3）表示"坚持要求"后的宾语从句：主要是指 insist 的宾语从句，从句谓语由"should+动词原形"构成，其中的 should 在美国英语中通	➢ I insisted that he (should) stay. 我坚持要他留下。 ➢ We all insist that we not rest until we finish the work.大家都坚

常可以省略。 ★动词 insist 如果表示坚持说，固执地声称（尤指别人反对或不信时），此时不需要用虚拟语气，试比较： ➢ He insisted that I had read his letter. 他坚持说我看过他的信。 ➢ He insisted that I should read his letter. 他坚持要我看他的信。	决要求不完工就不休息。 ➢ The detective insisted that he have a look. 警探坚持要查看。
（4）表示"建议"后的宾语从句：主要是指 advise, suggest, propose, recommend 等的宾语从句，从句 谓语由"should+动词原形"构成，其中的 should 在美国英语中通常可以省略。 ★与动词 insist 相似，suggest 只在表建议时用虚拟语气。 ➢ I wrote suggesting that he (should) come for the weekend. 我写信请他来度周末. ➢ His cool response suggested that he didn't like the idea. 他反应冷淡表明他并不喜欢这个主意。	➢ The doctor advised that he change his job. 医生劝他换工作。 ➢ They recommend that this tax be abolished. 他们建议取消这种税。 ➢ I suggest that we (should) have lunch right now. 我建议我们现 在就吃午饭。 ➢ The doctor advised [suggested] that he (should) not smoke. 医生建议他不要抽烟。 ➢ I propose that the matter be put to the vote at once. 我提议对此问题立刻进行表决。
（5）表示"提议""投票"后的宾语从句：主要是指 move, vote 等后的宾语从句，从句谓语由"should+动词原形"构成，其中的 should 在美国英语中通常可以省略。	➢ Mr. Chairman, I move that the matter be discussed after lunch. 主席先生，我建议此事午饭后再讨论。 ➢ Congress has voted that the present law be maintained. 国会投票决定维持现在这条法律。
（6）表示"要求"后的宾语从句：主要是指 ask, demand, require, request 等后的宾语从句，从句谓语 由"should+动词原形"构成，其中的 should 在美国英语中通常可以省略。	➢ I ask that he leave. 我要求他走开。 ➢ He requires that I (should) appear. 他要求我出场。 ➢ He demands that he be told/demands to be told everything. 他要求将一切都告诉他. ➢ She requested that no one be told of her decision until the next meeting. 她要求直到下次会议前任何人不得透露她的决定。
（7）表示"敦促"后的宾语从句：主要是指动词 urge 后的宾语从句，从句谓语由"should+动词 原形"构成，其中的 should 在美国英语中通常可以省略。	➢ He urged that we should go/urged (our) going/urged us to go. 他催我们走.
（8）表示"安排"后的宾语从句：主要是指动词 arrange 后的宾语从句，从句谓语由"should+动词原形"构成，其中的 should 在美国英语中通常可以省略。	➢ They arranged that the minister should be met at the airport. 他们安排在机场迎接这位部长。
（9）表示"希望""打算"后的宾语从句：主要是指动词 desire, intend 后的宾语从句，从句谓语由"should+动词原形"构成，其 中的 should 在美国英语中通常可以省略。	➢ She desires that you (should) see her at once. 她希望你立即见她。 ➢ You intended that she go. 你计划让她去
（10）表示"指示"后的宾语从句：主要是指动词 direct 后的宾语从句，从句谓语由"should+动词原形"构成，其中的 should 在美国英语中通常可以省略。	➢ The owners directed that the factory be closed. 厂主下令关厂。
（11）在 for fear that, in case, lest 引导的从句中，若用虚拟语气时，从句谓语一般为：（should/might） + do。	➢ She examined the door again for fear that a thief (should) come in. 她又把门检查了一遍，以防盗贼的进入。 ➢ He ran away lest he (should/might) be seen. 他怕人家看见他而跑开了。
（12）表情绪、观点的形容词或名词也用虚拟语气，如：necessary, important, impossible, strange, surprising 等。	➢ It's important to me that you should be there. 你应该在场，这对我来说很重要。 ➢ Do you think it is necessary that he (should) not be sent to

	China？我觉得有必要将他派往中国吗？＊should 表示"建议"的语气，可省。） ➢ ★It is strange that such a person should be our friend. 这样的人竟然是我们的朋友。＊such a friend is our friend 是一个实事，should 表示"竟然"的语气，不可省，因为这里表达的不是虚拟语气。
（13）虚拟语气还可用在关系从句中，表示："早该做某事了"时，关系从句中的谓语动词须用虚拟语气，其虚拟语气的结构为：It is (high / about) time that + 主语+ 动词的过去式 / should + do（should 不可省略）（优先使用动词过去式），即从句用虚拟过去式。	➢ It is time that I went to pick up my daughter at school. 我该去学校接我的女儿了。 ➢ It's high time you got a job. 你该找份工作了。
（14）说话时，为了表示客气、谦虚、委婉等常使用虚拟语气。其虚拟语气的结构形式常为：would / could / might / should +do。	➢ I should agree with you. 我本该同意你的观点。（委婉的不同意） ➢ Would you mind my shutting the door? 你介意我把门关起来吗？ ➢ I should like to make a phone call, if possible. 劳驾，我想打个电话。

总结：虚拟语气看似复杂，但只要我们掌握其本质，相对来说就容易了。

4. 练习

单选：选择最合适的答案。

(1) What a pity. Considering his ability and experience, he _______ better.
A. need have done　B. must have done　C. can have done　D. might have done

(2) If Newton lived today, he would be surprise by what _______ in science and technology.
A. had discovered　B. had been discovered　C. has discovered　D. has been discovered

(3) It is absolutely essential that William _______ his study in spite of some learning difficulties.
A. will continue　B. continued　C. continue　D. continues

(4) It's high time we _______ cutting down the rainforests.
A. stopped　B. had to stop　C. shall stop　D. stop

(5) A: I'm sorry. I _______ at you the other day.
B: Forget it. I was a bit out of control myself.
A. shouldn't shout　B. shouldn't have shouted　C. mustn't shout　D. mustn't have shouted

(6) If there were no subjunctive mood, English _______ much easier.
A. will be　B. would have been　C. could have been　D. would be

(7) The guard at the gate insisted that everybody _______ the rules.
A. obeys　B. obey　C. will obey　D. would obey

(8) The plant is dead. I _______ it more water.
A. will give　B. would have given　C. must give　D. should have given

(9) _______ your coat at once. We must hurry.
A. Wear　B. Wearing　C. Put on　D. Putting on

(10) _______ it rain heavily tomorrow, we would have to put off the visit to the Forbidden City.
A. Were　B. Should　C. Would　D. Will

(11) If he had spent more time practicing speaking English before, he _______ able to speak it much better now.

A. will be B. would be C. has been D. would have been

(12) But for their help, we _______ the program in time.

A. can not finish B. will not finish C. had not finished D. could not have finished

(13) He did not regret saying what he did but felt that he _______ it differently.

A. could express B. would express C. could have expressed D. must have expressed

(14) What do you mean, there are only ten tickets? There _______ be twelve.

A. should B .would C. will D. shall

(15) A: Hi, Tom. Any idea where Jane is?

B: She _______ in the classroom. I saw her there just now.

A. shall be B. should have been C. must be D. might have been

(16) Had I known about this computer program, a huge amount of time and energy _______.

A. would have been saved B. had been saved C. will be saved D. was saved

(17) If he _______ my advice, he wouldn't have lost his job.

A. followed B. should follow C. had followed D. would follow

(18) George is going to talk about the geography of his country, but I'd rather he______ more on its culture.

A. focus B. focused C. would focus D. had focused

(19) If you have a job,______ yourself to it and finally you'll succeed.

A. do devote B. don't devote C. devoting D. not devoting

(20) A: Where are the children? The dinner's going to be completely ruined.

B:I wish they _______ always late.

A. weren't B. hadn't been C. wouldn't be D. wouldn't have been

(21) I _______ through that bitter period without your generous help.

A. couldn't have gone B. didn't go C. wouldn't go D. hadn't gone

(22) I _______ sooner but I didn't know that they were waiting for me.

A. had come B. was coming C. would come D. would have come

(23) We _______ the difficulty together, but why didn't you tell me?

A. should face B. might face C. could have faced D. must have faced

(24) Jack is a great talker. It's high time that he _______ something instead of just talking.

A. will do B. has done C. do D. did

(25) Sorry, I am too busy now. If I _______ time, I would certainly go for an outing with you.

A. have had B. had had C. have D. had

(26) Had they known what was coming next, they _______ second thoughts.

A. may have B. could have C. must have had D. might have had

(27) Grace doesn't want to move to New York because she thinks if she _______ there, she wouldn't be able to see her parents very often.

A. lives B. would live C. has lived D. were to live

(28) If we _______ now to protect the environment, we'll live to regret it.

A. hadn't acted B. haven't acted C. don't act D. won't act

(29) I _______ to my cousin's birthday party last night, but I was not available.

A. went B. had gone C. would go D. would have gone

(30) Eye doctors recommend that a child's first eye exam _______ at the age of six months old.

A. was B. be C. were D. is

第二十二章　语序

英语的语序通常为：主语+谓语。通常来说，越重要的信息越靠后①，如：

- He gave me a **book.** 他给了我一本书。
- He gave a book **to me.** 他给了我一本书。

前者侧重 book，适合回答 What did he give you? 后者着重 me，适合回答 Who did he give a book to②? 但有时为了修辞（如强调某一信息③或为了承上启下等），会将某些成分前置或后置，下面我们着重介绍前置。

1.　前置

前置主要是为了强调某一成分，常用情况见下表：

（1）不引起倒装的前置	1）宾语和表语前置通常不引起倒装，即只需将这些成分提前即可，如： ➢ **A horrible mess** you've made of it. 真乱，你弄得。 ➢ **Very strange** it seemed. 真奇怪，这个看起来。
	2）在 as, though 引导的副词性从句中，一般将形容词、副词或名词等置于句首，如： ➢ **Young** as I am, I already know what career I want to follow. 我虽然还小，可是对要从事的职业已胸有成竹了。
（2）引起部分倒装的前置：指将谓语的一部分，如助动词或情态动词倒装至主语之前，而谓语动词无变化。如果句中的谓语没有助动词或情态动词，则需添加助动词 do, does 或 did，并将其置于主语之前。	1）前置宾语由“not a+名词”或“not a single+名词”构成时，引起部分倒装，如： ➢ **Not a single person did** I know at the party. 聚会中的人，我一个也不认识。
	2）当句首为否定词或带有否定意义的词语时，一般用部分倒装，如： ➢ **Seldom do** I go to work by bus. 我很少乘公共汽车上班。 ➢ **Not until twelve o'clock did** she go to bed last night. 她昨晚十二点才上床睡觉。 ➢ **Not only does television** appeal to those who can read but to those who can't. 电视不仅对会阅读的人有吸引力，而且对那些不会的也是如此。
	3）当句首为“only+副词性成分”时，一般用部分倒装，如： ➢ **Only in this way can** you solve this problem. 只有用这种方法，你才可以解决这个问题。

---

① When writing a text, we usually try to start each sentence with something known or expected in the context. Usually it relates to something just mentioned. The new information comes later in the sentence. Examples:

- The men are in prison. **They** raided five banks.
- The girls did well. **Celia** won the first prize.
- There were lots of prizes. **The first prize** went to Celia.
- We can't get all the furniture in. **The sofa** is too big to go through the door.

② 章振邦《新编英语语法教程》第二版，p697。

③ There is an another special pattern for emphasis: It + a form of ***be*** + emphasized part + that + other parts of the sentence. Examples:

- It is Jimmy that/who has a pet. *The original sentence is ***Jimmy has a pet.*** If the emphasized part is the subject, we use ***who, which*** or ***that***, otherwise we normally use ***that***.
- It is Tom that I met in the station.
- It is in the morning that I gave the gift to her.
- It was because she got hurt that she was in the hospital.
- It is chairman that we elected James.
- It was a doctor that Lily eventually became.
- I was me who told you, remember? *When a pronoun comes after be, it is usually in the object form.
- It was Amundsen, not Scott, who reached the South Pole in 1911.

In a present/past simple sentence, we can emphasize the verb by adding a form of ***do*** before it. Examples:
The girl does look pretty; *I do want to go to the cinema*; *I did break the vase*.

	➢ **Only after he had spoken out the word did** he realize he had made a big mistake. 只有当他已经说出那个字后才意识到自己犯了个大错误。
	4）以 so/such (...that)开头的句子，一般用部分倒装，如： ➢ **So fast does** he run that he is far ahead of others. 他跑得如此快， 以至于远远领先于其他人。 ➢ **So angry was** he that he couldn't speak. 他愤怒得一句话也说不出来。***注意：因为 was 就是句子的谓语，所以这个是全部倒装。**
	5）当方式副词、频度副词等移至句首时，有时也用部分倒装，如： ➢ **Often did** they think of going there, but they never had a chance. 他们常考虑去那，但一直没机会。 ➢ **Gladly would** I pay more if I could get better service by doing so. 如果多付些钱就能得到更好的服务，我愿意这样做。 **★如果主语较长，也可以使用全部倒装。**
（3）引起全部倒装的前置：指将句子中的谓语全部置于主语之前。	1）当表语前置时，如果主语较长，这时用全部倒装，如： ➢ **Poor are** the people who have lost their houses in the fire. 火灾中房子被烧毁的人们真可怜。
	2）当句首为方位副词或拟声词，谓语动词为 go, come 等表示位置转移的动作动词时，通常用全部倒装[1]，如： ➢ **Up went** the rocket into the air. 嗖地一声火箭就飞上天了。 ➢ **Boom went** the cannon! 轰隆一声大炮开火了! **★如果主语是代词，不用倒装，如：** ➢ Lower and lower he bent. 他越弯越低。
	3）当句首为表示地点的介词词组时，也可以用全部倒装，如： ➢ **In this chapter will be found** a particular answer. 在这一章中，可以找到一个特定的答案。 ➢ **Round the corner walked** a fat policeman. 一个胖警察走过转角。 ➢ **Under the table was lying** an unconscious young man. 桌子下躺着一个不醒人事的年轻人。
	4）以副词 here, there, now, then 开头的句子，常用全部倒装，如： ➢ **There appeared** to be nobody willing to help. 看来没人愿意帮忙。 ➢ **There's** a man at the bus-stop. 公共汽车站上有一个男人。 ➢ **Here comes** the bus! 公共汽车来了! ➢ **Now comes** your turn. 现在轮到你了。 ★如果主语是人称代词，不用倒装，如： ➢ Here it comes! 它来了!
	5）在叙事性书面语中，直接引语[2]后常跟 asked Jim, answered John, said the old lady, grunted Peter 之类的词语。在这些词语中，动词常在主语之前即采用全部倒，主语是代词时，不用倒装，如： ➢ "What do you mean?" **asked Henry.** "你什么意思"，亨利问道。 ➢ "What do you mean?" **he asked.** "你什么意思"，他问道。

2. 练习

单选：选择最合适的答案。

(1) It was announced that only when the fire was under control _______ to return to their homes.

A. the residents would be permitted　　　　B. had the residents been permitted

C. would the residents be permitted　　　　D. the residents had been permitted

(2) In the exam, the _______ you are, the _______ mistakes you'll make.

[1] 章振邦《新编英语语法教程》第二版，p702.

[2] Direct discourse is the practice of relaying what a speaker has said word for word. It is in contrast to indirect discourse, in which the author uses paraphrasing to get across the meaning of a speaker.

A. carefully, little B. more carefully, fewest C. more careful, fewer D. more careful, less

(3) _______, his idea was accepted by all the people at the meeting.

A. Strange as might it sound B. As it might sound strange

C. As strange it might sound D. Strange as it might sound

(4) I like sports and _______ my brother.

A. so does B. so is C. so D. so likes

(5) She is not fond of cooking, _______ I.

A. so am B. nor am C. neither do D. nor do

(6) Only in this way _______ progress in your English.

A. you make B. can you make C. you be able to make D. will you able to make

(7) _______ got into the room, _______ the telephone rang.

A. He hardly had, then B. Hardly had he, when C. He had not, than D. Not had he, when

(8) At the foot of the mountain _______.

A. a village lie B. lies a village C. does a village lie D. lying a village

(9) I've tried very hard to improve my English. But by no means _______ with my progress.

A. the teacher is not satisfied B. is the teacher not satisfied

C. the teacher is satisfied D. is the teacher satisfied

(10) A：I have changed my job.

B：_______.

A. So do I B. So have I C. So I do D. So I have

(11) _______ the morning train, he would not have been late for the meeting.

A. Did he catch B. should he catch C. has he caught D. Had he caught

(12) Among the crisis that face humans _______ the lack of natural resources.

A. is B. are C. is there D. are there

(13) _______ on the endless green grass are sheep, cattle and horses.

A. Being wandered B. Being wandering C. Wandering D. Wandered

(14) _______ that we all think it worth the money.

A. Such fine furniture has he bought B. So fine a furniture has he bought

C. Such fine furniture he has bought D. So fine a furniture he has bought

(15) The door opened and in _______.

A. he came B. came he C. did he come D. he come

(16) For a moment nothing happened, then _______ all shouting together.

A. voices had come B. came voices C. voices would come D. did voices come

(17) According to the literary review, Shakespeare _______ his characters live through their language in his plays.

A. will make B. had made C. was making D. makes

(18) The computer was used in teaching. As a result, not only _______, but students became more interested in the lessons.

A. saved was teachers' energy B. was teachers' energy saved

C. teachers' energy was saved D. was saved teachers' energy

(19) A: Have you seen the film *Under the Hawthorn Tree*?

B: Of course, I have. It was in our village _______ it was made.

A. that B. where C. when D. which

(20) Hearing the dog barking fiercely, away _______.

A. fleeing the thief B. was fleeing the thief C. the thief was fleeing D. fled the thief

(21) Unsatisfied _______ with the payment, he took the job just to got some work experience.

A. though was he B. though he was C. he was though D. was he though

(22) So sudden _______ that the enemy had no time to escape.

A. did the attack B. the attack did C. was the attack D. the attack was

(23) Not until I came home last night _______ to bed.

A. Mum did go B. did Mum go C. went Mum D. Mum went

(24) At the meeting place of the Yangtze River and Jialing River______, one of the largest cities in china.

A. lies Chongqing B. Chongqing lies C. does lie Chongqing D. does Chongqing lie

(25) No matter how______, it is not necessarily lifeless.

A. a desert may be dry B. dry a desert may be

C. may a desert be dry D. dry may a desert be

(26) It is not how much we do but how much love we put into what we do _______ benefits our work most.

A. who B. which C. that D. what

(27) Only after they had discussed the matter for several hours _______ a decision.

A. they reached B. did they reach C. they reach D. do they reach

(28) Never before _______ seen anybody who can play tennis as well as Robert.

A. had she B. she had C. has she D. she has

第二十三章　情态动词

1.　情态动词的基本用法

情态动词主要包括 can, could, may, might, shall, should, will, would, must, ought to, used to, need, had better/best, dare 等，下面我们将借助词典学习常见情态动词的基本用法：

can

基本用法	示例
1)　Used to indicate physical or mental ability: 能，会：用于表示身体或精神上的能力。	➢ I can run fast. 我能跑得很快。 ➢ I can swim. 我会游泳。
2)　Used to indicate possession of a specified power, right, or privilege: 拥有权利：用于表示拥有某种特殊权力、权利或特权。	➢ The President can veto congressional bills. 总统有权否决国会提案。
3)　indicating possibility 表示可能性。	➢ That can't be Mary--she's in hospital. 那不可能是玛丽--她住院了。 ➢ I wonder if my long lost neighbor can still be alive. 我怀疑我失踪已久的邻居是否还有可能活着。
4)　indicating requests 表示请求。	➢ Can you feed the cat? 你喂喂猫好吗? ➢ Can you hold on a minute, please? 请你等一下好吗？
5)　indicating permission 表示许可。	➢ Can I read your newspaper? 我能看看你的报纸吗? ➢ You can take the car, if you want. 你要用那辆汽车就尽管用。
6)　used to describe typical behaviour or state 用以描述特有的行为或情形。	➢ She can be very forgetful. 她这个人很健忘。 ➢ Scotland can be very cold. 苏格兰要是冷起来还真够冷的。

could

基本用法	示例
1)　indicating possibility 表示可能性。	➢ You could be right, I suppose. 我想可能是你对。 ➢ If you're not careful, you could get into even worse trouble. 如果你不小心，你可能会遇到大的麻烦。
2)　indicating requests 表示请求。	➢ Could you baby-sit for us on Friday? 星期五你替我们照看小孩行吗? ➢ Could you help me with these boxes? 可以帮我搬一下这些箱子吗？
3)　indicating permission 表示许可。	➢ Could I use your phone? 让我用一下你的电话好吗? ➢ Could I come round next week? 我下星期来拜访好吗?
4)　indicating suggestions 表示建议。	➢ We could write a letter to the headmaster. 我们不妨给校长写封信。 ➢ You could always try his home number. 实在不行的话，你还可以试一试他家的电话号码。

may

基本用法	示例
1) indicating possibility 用以表示可能。	➢ It may rain today. 今天可能下雨。 ➢ This coat may be Peter's. 这件大衣可能是彼得的。
2) indicating permission 表示许可。	➢ You may come if you wish. 你要来就来吧。 ➢ May I take a swim? Yes, you may. 我可以去游泳吗?是的，你可以。
3) Used to express contingency, purpose, or result in clauses introduced by that or so that：用于由 that 或者 so that 引导的从句中，表示可能、目的或结果。	➢ Write to him at once so that he may know in time. 立刻写信给他，好让他及时知道。 ➢ Express ideas so that the average person may understand. 把你的意思用一般人能听明白的话表达出来。
4) Used to express a desire or fervent wish: 希望：用于表达愿望、祝愿。	➢ May you both be very happy! 祝你们俩幸福!

might[①]

基本用法	示例
1) indicating possibility 用以表示可能。	➢ We might discover a pot of gold at the end of the rainbow. 我们可能在彩虹的末端发现一罐金子。 ➢ He might get here in time, but I can't be sure. 他可能及时来到这里，不过我不能肯定。
2) used to make polite requests or appeals 用于婉转的请求或吁请	➢ You might just (ie Please) call in at the supermarket for me. 请顺便为我去一趟超级市场吧。 ➢ I think you might at least offer to help! 我认为你至少可以主动帮帮忙吧! ➢ You might write more frequently. 你应该经常写信才是。
3) indicating permission 表示许可。	➢ Might I ask a question? 我是不是可以提个问题? ➢ Might I express my opinion? 我可以发表意见吗?

shall

基本用法	示例
1) Something, such as an order, a promise, a requirement, or an obligation: 表命令、要求、承诺或义务。*即接意愿某事一定要发生。	➢ She shall not enter my house again. 她不得再进我家。 ➢ Candidates shall remain in their seats until all the papers have been collected. 试卷全部收回后应试人才可离开座位。 ➢ You shall have an answer by tomorrow. 到明天你可以得到答复。 ➢ The lease stated that tenants should maintain the property in good condition. 租约规定承租人必须保持房产完好无损。

[①] The same modal verb form can refer to the present or the future. Examples:
- Present: I'm looking for the letter. It might be somewhere in this pile of papers.
- Future: I posted the letter today. It might get there tomorrow.

The context shows whether the present or the future is meant.

2) indicating offers or suggestions：表示提供意见或建议	➢ Shall I carry your bag？我帮你拿手提包，好吗？ ➢ Let's look at it again, shall we？咱们再看一看好吗？

should

基本用法	示例
1) used to say or ask what is the correct or best thing to do：应该，即表示做某事是正确的，或某事最好要做。	➢ Children should obey their parents. 儿童应该服从他们的父母。 ➢ She should stop smoking. 他应该戒烟。
2) used to refer to a possible event or situation：可能，即表示某事可能发生。	➢ If you should change your mind, do let me know. 如果你改变主意，一定要告诉我。 ➢ Should anyone phone (ie If anyone phones), please tell them I'm busy. 有人打电话来，就说我很忙。
3) used to show something is expected：预计某事会发生。	➢ I should have finished reading it by Friday. 我大概到星期五能把它看完。 ➢ We should arrive before dark. 我们按说能在天黑前到达。
4) used to say that sth that was expected has not happened：表示预计发生的事，却没有发生。	➢ It should be snowing now, according to the weather forecast. 根据天气预报，现在应该正下雪的。 ➢ The bus should have arrived ten minutes ago. 公交车 10 分钟就应该到的。
5) used to say that sth was unexpected：表示未料到某事。	➢ That he should speak to you like that is quite astonishing. 他竟然这样对你说话，实在让人吃惊。 ➢ I am delighted that he should take that view. 他有那种看法，我十分高兴。 ➢ We're sorry that you should feel uncomfortable. 你觉得在这儿不舒服，我们非常抱歉。 ➢ Why should he think that? 他怎么那么想呢?
6) used after so that/in order that to express purpose：用于 so that/in order that 之后表示目的或动机。	➢ He took his umbrella so that he shouldn't get wet. 他带了把伞以防淋湿。 ➢ He put the cases in the car so that he should be able to make an early start. 他把箱子放在汽车里，这样他就可以早点动身了。 ➢ She repeated the instructions slowly in order that he should understand. 她把那些指示慢慢重复了一遍好让他听明白。

will

基本用法	示例
1) used to show that someone is willing to do something：用以表示愿意做某事。	➢ He'll take you home--you only have to ask. 他愿意送你回家--你跟他一说就行。 ➢ I'll check this letter for you, if you want. 你要想让我给你查查这封信，我就给你查查。 ➢ Will you post this letter for me, please? 请您把这封信给我寄出去行吗? ➢ You'll water the plants while I'm away, won't you? 我不在的时候，你给这些植物浇浇水行吗?
2) indicating present predictions：用以表示对目前	➢ This'll be the book you are looking for. 这可能是你正在找的那本书。

	事物的预料。	➢ That will be the messenger ringing. 可能是送信的人在按铃。 ➢ They'll be home by this time. 他们现在一定到家了。
3)	Used to indicate requirement or command: 用于表示要求或命令。	➢ You will report to me afterward. 你稍后要向我报告。 ➢ Will you be quiet! 安静点儿!
4)	describing general truths：用于叙述众所周知的事实。	➢ Oil will float on water. 油能浮在水面上。 ➢ Matches will not strike if they are damp.火柴潮湿就擦不着。
5)	describing habits in the present or past：用于叙述目前的或过去的习惯时。	➢ People will talk. 人们总是说三道四。 ➢ She will listen to records, alone in her room, for hours. 她独自一人在屋里听唱片，每每一听就是半天。 ➢ He would spend hours in the bathroom or on the telephone. 他以前一进洗澡间或是一打电话，往往就是半天。 ➢ He will comb his hair at the table, even though he knows I don't like it. 他偏偏要在饭桌哪儿梳头，还明明知道我腻味这事儿。 ➢ He would keep telling those dreadful stories. 他专门爱讲那些讨厌的故事。
6)	Used to indicate capacity or ability: 用于表示能力或功能。	➢ This bus will hold 40 people. 这辆大客车可以坐 40 人。 ➢ This metal will not crack under heavy pressure. 这种金属在重压下也不会破碎。

would

基本用法		示例
1)	used to show that someone is willing to do something：用以表示愿意做某事。＊看成 will 的过去式，表示客气。	➢ Would you pay me in cash, please? 请您付给我现金行吗? ➢ Would she like to borrow my bicycle? 她想借用我的自行车吗? ➢ I'd love a coffee. 我倒想喝杯咖啡。 ➢ I'd be only too glad to help. 我非常愿意帮帮忙。
2)	used to give opinions that you are not certain about：用于表示不确定的意见。	➢ It would seem to be getting warmer. 天气似乎变得更暖和了。 ➢ I would imagine the journey will take about an hour. 我猜想这个行程大概需要一个小时左右吧。

must

基本用法		示例
1)	indicating obligation：表示必要。	➢ We must obey orders. 我们必须服从命令。 ➢ You must not do it. 你不可以做那件事。 ➢ I must go to the bank to get some money. 我得到银行去取些钱。 ➢ I must ask you not to do that again. 我得劝你不要再做那种事情了。
2)	drawing a logical conclusion：做出逻辑推断。	➢ You must be tired after your long journey. 你走了这么远的路，一定很累。 ➢ He must have earned a large sum of money. 他一定是挣了一笔巨款。 ➢ We must have read the same report. 咱们看的一定是同一份报道。
3)	To be determined to; have as a fixed resolve:下决	➢ If you must leave, do it quietly. 如果你一定要离开，那就悄悄地走。

心一定要；坚持要。	➢ Why must it rain on Sunday? 偏要在星期天下雨，讨厌!

ought to

基本用法	示例
1) indicating obligation：表示必要。	➢ You ought to work harder than that. 你应当更努力地工作。 ➢ You ought to wear a raincoat. 你应该穿件雨衣。 ➢ There ought to be more buses during the rush hour. 高峰期间应该多开几趟公共汽车。 ➢ You ought to see her new film. 你应当看看她新拍的电影。
2) drawing a tentative conclusion：作推测性的结论。	➢ She ought to finish by next week.下星期她该完成了。 ➢ Look at the sky--it ought to be a fine afternoon. 看看天--下午一定很晴朗。

used to

基本用法	示例
1) if something used to happen, it happened regularly or all the time in the past, but does not happen now: 表达过去经常的或持续的行为，但现在不再是。	➢ I used to live in London. 我过去一直住在伦敦。 ➢ We used to go there every year. 我过去每年都去那儿。 ➢ Our company used to do business with theirs. 我们公司过去和他们的公司常有业务往来。

had better/best

基本用法	示例
1) had better/best：would be wise to 最好	➢ We had better go before the storm becomes worse. 在暴风雨更大之前我们最好就走。 ➢ We'd better not invite him. 我们最好不要邀请他。

dare

基本用法	示例
1) have sufficient courage or impudence (to do sth: 敢	➢ I wonder whether he dare stand up in public. 我不知道他敢不敢站在大庭广众面前。 ➢ They hardly dared breathe as somebody walked past the door! 有人在门前走过，他们几乎不敢呼吸了!

2. 练习

单选：选择最合适的答案。

(1) A: Whose pencil box is this?

B: It _______ be Tom's. It has his name on it.

A. must B. may C. might D. can't

(2) A: Where is Jenny?

B: I'm not sure. She _______ in the school library.

A. maybe B. must be C. may be D. will be

(3) A: Must I hand in my homework now, Mr. Smith?

B: No, you _______.

A. can't B. shouldn't C. wouldn't D. needn't

(4) She _______ have left school, for her bike is still here.

A. can't B. wouldn't C. shouldn't D. needn't

(5) It is usually warm in my hometown in March, but it _______ be rather cold sometime.

A. must B. can C. should D. would

(6) "You _______ borrow my notes provided you take care of them," I told my friend.

A. could B. should C. must D. can

(7) I didn't hear the phone. I _______ asleep.

A. must be B. must have been C. should be D. should have been

(8) A：Excuse me, may I keep the book a little longer?

B：Sorry. You _______ return it today.

A. must B. mustn't C. can D. can't

(9) He is very strong. He _______ lift the heavy box.

A. can B. need C. must D. have to

(10) You look quite tired. I think you _______ lie down and have a rest.

A. should B. will C. would D. can

(11) A: _______ I smoke here?

B: No. You are not allowed to smoke in public places.

A. Could B. Must C. Should D. Might

(12) My grandfather _______ me stories when I was young.

A. was used to tell B. is used to telling C. used to tell D. used to telling

(13) You'd better _______ too much meat. You are much too fat.

A. not eat B. eat C. not to eat D. eat not

(14) A: Will you stay for some more days?

B: Sorry, I _______. My mother called to ask me to go back at once.

A. mustn't B. may not C. can't D. wouldn't

(15) A: _______ I use your eraser, Rose?

B: Sure. Here you are.

A. May B. Would C. Need D. Must

(16) His room is dark. He must _______ to bed.

A. go B. be going C. have gone D. have been gone

(17) I missed the last bus, so I _______ go home on foot.

A. must B. have to C. may D. had to

(18) Life is unpredictable; even the poorest _______ become the richest.

A. shall B. must C. need D. might

(19) When I was a child, I _______ watch TV whenever I wanted to.

A. should B. could C. must D. need

(20) Some people who don't like to talk much are not necessarily shy; they _______ just be quiet people.

A. must B. may C. should D. would

(21) One of the few things you _______ say about English people with certainty is that they talk a lot about the weather.

A. need B. must C. should D. can

(22) This printer is of good quality. If it _______ break down within the first year, we would repair it at our expense.

A. would B. should C. could D. might

(23) Just be patient. You _______ expect the world to change so soon.

A. can't B. needn't C. may not D. will not

(24) You _______ buy a gift, but you can if you want to.

A. must B. mustn't C. have to D. don't have to

(25) Mark _______ have hurried. After driving at top speed, he arrived half an hour early.

A. needn't B. wouldn't C. mustn't D. couldn't

(26) They _______ have arrived at lunchtime but their flight was delayed.

A. will B. can C. must D. should

(27) It _______ be the postman at the door. It's only six o'clock.

A. mustn't B. can't C. won't D. needn't

(28) One of our rules is that every student _______ wear school uniform while at school.

A. might B. could C. shall D. will

(29) Since nobody gave him any help, he _______ have done the research on his own.

A. can B. must C. would D. need

(30) My mom suggests that we _______ eat out for a change this weekend.

A. should B. might C. could D. would

参考答案

第二章　关系从句

A.　用适当的关系代词或关系副词填空。

1-5: who, who/that, which/that, who/whom/that, which/that; 6-10: whose, whose, whose, who/whom, when/that; 11-15: where, when/that, where, why, As

B.　单选：选择最合适的答案。

1-5: A C C C B; 6-10: C C B B D; 11-15: A D C B A; 16-20: B A C C D; 21-25: D D C C B; 26-30: B C C A C; 31-38: D C B A B A A A

第三章　名词性从句

单选：选择最合适的答案。

1-5：D D D D A；6-10：B B D A D; 11-15: A B A B B; 16-20: D C D C A; 21-25: A C B A D; 26-32: C C A D B A D

第四章　谓语

指出以下各句中谓语动词块的语态、状态、时间及人称。

(1) My name is Susan. * is; active; simple; present; third (singular).
(2) The human being is a primate. * is; active; simple; present; third (singular).
(3) I was told about it yesterday. * was told; passive; simple; past; first.
(4) The house is being painted. * is being painted; passive; continuous; present; third (singular).
(5) She has been in her room for hours. * has been; active; perfect; present; third (singular).
(6) She's been invited to a party. * has been invited; passive; perfect; present; third (singular).
(7) She wants to be a doctor * wants; active; simple; present; third (singular).
(8) Part of her article is taken from my book on the subject. * is taken; passive; simple; present; third (singular).
(9) They've been asking a lot of questions. * have been asking; active; perfect continuous; present; third.
(10) We'll be starting in about half an hour. * will be starting; active; continuous; future; first.
(11) Smoking is not permitted. * is not permitted; passive; simple; present; third (singular).
(12) The problem is finding the time to get things done. * is; active; simple; present; third (singular).
(13) He was just being rude. * was being; active; continuous; past; third (singular).
(14) Rachel will be three in November. * will be; active; simple; future; third (singular).
(15) The ship had vanished without trace. * had vanished; active; perfect; past; third (singular).
(16) A meeting will be held next Tuesday at 3 p.m. * will be held; passive; simple; future; third (singular).
(17) Maybe by then you will have changed your mind. * will have changed; active; perfect; future; second.
(18) We shall arrive tomorrow. * shall arrive; active; simple; future; first.
(19) Are you good at speaking in public. * are; active; simple; present; second.
(20) On Saturday, we will have been living in this house for a year. * will have been living; active; perfect continuous; future; first.

第五章　限制性关系从句的简化

A.　尝试简化以下句子中的关系从句。

(1)	She wears a **white** coat.

(2)	The **red** basketball is very expensive.
(3)	One of them was carrying a bag **full of money.**
(4)	The mobile **in the box** is mine.
(5)	After I had left a small village **in the south of France,** I drove on to the next town.
(6)	The thief **with the money** got such a fright that he dropped the bag.
(7)	The man **sitting by my side** is my uncle.
(8)	Jane joined the line of people **waiting for the bus.**
(9)	Jane expressed a wish **to earn her own living.**
(10)	I don't trust his promise **to come for a visit.**
(11)	I live in a very old town **surrounded by beautiful woods.**
(12)	The girl **injured in the car accident yesterday** is her classmate.
(13)	I showed my students some old maps **borrowed from the library.**
(14)	The trees **blown down in the storm** have been moved off the road.
(15)	Here is a map **showing you how to get there.**
(16)	Look over there—there's a very long, winding path **leading up to the house.**
(17)	Many buildings in the city need repairing, but the one **to be repaired first** is the library.
(18)	Are you going to the banquet **to be given at the consulate?**
(19)	We have a lot of things **to do today.**
(20)	There is nothing **to be done now.**
(21)	I'm hungry. Get me something **to eat.**
(22)	I want someone **to talk to.**
(23)	He only had long nights **in which to study.**
(24)	Here are the letters **for the manager to sign.**
(25)	I have some work **for you to do.**
(26)	It's time **for us to leave.**
(27)	Where are the things **to be taken to her?**
(28)	She is not a girl **to act rashly.**
(29)	He is not a man **to bow before difficulties.**
(30)	Sheila was the first **to arrive.**
(31)	She was the only one **to survive the crash.**
(32)	He was the only foreigner **to be given such an honour.**

B. 单选：选择最合适的答案。

1-5: B D B B D; 6-10: C A C B B; 11-15: A C A B A

第六章 非限制性关系从句的简化

A. 尝试简化以下句子中的关系从句。

(1)	Diane was twenty years old, **the youngest in the family**.
(2)	It was Albert, **the husband of Molly's sister**.

(3)	I returned the letter **unopened.**
(4)	The man wanted to fly to Rockall, **a lonely island in the Atlantic Ocean.**
(5)	The Olympic Games, **first played in 776 B.C.,** did not include women players until 1912.
(6)	Tsinghai University, **founded in 1911,** is home to a great number of outstanding figures.
(7)	More highways have been built in China, **making it much easier for people to travel form one place to another.**
(8)	The island, **joined to the mainland by a bridge,** is easy to go to.
(9)	A small plane crashed into a hillside five miles east of the city, **killing all four people on board.**
(10)	Dina, **having struggled for months to find a job as a waitress,** finally took a position at a local advertising agency.

B. 单选：选择最合适的答案。

1-5: A A D C B; 6-13: B C D B B A B A

第七章 并列分句的简化

A. 尝试简化以下句子中的粗体所示的并列分句。

(1)	**Lost in thought**, he almost walked into the car in front of him.
(2)	Lots of rescue workers were working around the clock, **sending supplies to Yushu, Qinghai Province after the earthquake.**
(3)	The lawyer listened with full attention, **trying not to miss any point**.
(4)	**Having been shown around the Water Cube**, we were then taken to see the Bird's Nest for the 2008 Olympic Games.
(5)	The lady walked around the shops, **keeping an eye out for bargains.**
(6)	The news shocked the public, **leading to great concern about students' safety at school.**
(7)	**Having been told many times,** he finally understood it.
(8)	**Having failed to reach them on the phone**, we sent an email instead.
(9)	The children went home from the school, **their lessons finished for the day.**
(10)	He was busy writing a story, **only stopping once in a while to smoke a cigarette.**
(11)	**Faced with so much trouble**, we failed to complete the task on time.
(12)	**Attracted by the beauty of nature**, Lisa decided to spend another two days on the farm.
(13)	After his journey from abroad， Richard Jones returned home **exhausted.**

B. 单选：选择最合适的答案。

1-5: C A A B A; 6-10: B C B A C; 11-15: C B A B C 16-20: C D D A B; 21-25: B C D A C; 26-30: C B B D D; 31-35: A D D D D; 36-40: C B A B A

第八章 名词性从句的简化

A. 尝试简化以下句子中的名词性从句。

(1)	It's customary **for the women to sit apart.**
(2)	It is important **for students to attend all the lectures.**

(3)	Is it necessary **for us meet?**
(4)	We advised **them to start early.**
(5)	It's unusual **for him to refuse a drink.**
(6)	It seems inappropriate **for us to intervene at this stage.**
(7)	It'll take a long time **for her to recover from the illness.**
(8)	They believed **him to be insane.**
(9)	I believe **it to have been a mistake.**

B. 单选：选择最合适的答案。

1-5: C C A D B; 6-10: D C C C C; 11-15: C B C D B; 16-20 A B B B B

第九章 运用面向对象英语语法分析句子

单选：选择最合适的答案。

1-5: D D A D B; 6-10: A D D D B; 11-15: A A C B C; 16-20: D D C C C; 21-25: D A B C A; 26-30: A D D B C; 31-35: B C D A A; 36-40: C A C B B; 41-45: B B C B B; 46-50: B B A C C; 51-55: A A C D A; 56-60: B A C A C; 61-65: A A C B C: 66-70: A C C B C; 71-75: B C A A A; 76-80: C A D B C; 81-85: D C B C C; 86-90: C C B A C; 91-95: C B B A B; 96-100: D B A A B; 101-105: A A A D C; 106-110: C B A C A; 111-115: A C A B C; 116-120: A C D A C; 121-125: A D A A C: 126-130: A C B B B; 131-135: C A D C D; 136-140: A D C D A; 141-145: A B C B C; 146-150: D A D D D; 151-155: A A B A B; 156-160: B D C C A; 161-165: C B A B C; 166-172: C D C D D C D

第十章 副词性从句

单选：选择最合适的答案。

1-5: A C D B D; 6-10: A C B A B; 11-15: B B B B C; 16-20: C A D A C; 21-25: B B A D C; 26-30: A C A B A; 31-35: B C D B A; 36-39: ACBD

第十一章 介词

单选：选择最合适的答案。

1-5: B C A A C; 6-10: A D D B B; 11-15: A A C C A ; 16-20: C D B C B ; 21-25: A B A A B ; 26-30: D D B C C; 31-35: C C B A D ; 36-40: C C C D D ; 41-45: D D D D D ; 45-51: B C A B D C

第十二章 名词

单选：选择最合适的答案。

1-5: D C C B A; 6-10: A D B C D; 11-15: A D D D C; 16-21: B D A C A C

第十三章 冠词

单选：选择最合适的答案。

1-5: C D A D D; 6-10: C C C D D; 11-15: B A A C A; 16-20: C C C A A; 21-25: B A C D A; 26-33: B C A D B C C C

第十四章 代词

单选：选择最合适的答案。

1-5: D C D C D ; 6-10: B B B D C; 11-15: B D D A D ; 16-20: C C B C C ; 21-26: C A A C D C

第十五章 数词

单选：选择最合适的答案。

1-5: D D A B B; 6-10: B A D C C; 11-15: A B B B A; 16-19: D A C B

第十七章　形容词

单选：选择最合适的答案。

1-5: C B C C B; 6-10: D D B C B; 11-16: D B A D D; 16-23 D A A B B B A C

第十八章　句子的种类

单选：选择最合适的答案。

1-5: C A B A B; 6-10: B D A C C; 11-15: A D D B A; 16-24: D A D B B B B A A

第十九章　时态

单选：选择最合适的答案。

1-5: A C B C B; 6-10: A A D D D; 11-15; B D B A D; 16-20: A C B B B; 21-25: C D D C A; 26-30: B C A C D; 31-35: C C B A A; 36-40: C D A B B; 41-45: D B C A A; 46-50: C D A A D; 51-55: D D D C B

第二十章　主谓一致

单选：选择最合适的答案。

1-5: C A D A B; 6-10: C B C D B; 11-15: A A A D A; 16-20: B A D C D; 21-25: B C A C C; 26-30: A A A C A; 31-37: C A B C D C A

第二十一章　语气

单选：选择最合适的答案。

1-5: D D C A B; 6-10: D B D C B; 11-15: B D C A C; 16-20: A C B A A; 21-25: A D C D D; 26-30: D D C D B

第二十二章　语序

单选：选择最合适的答案。

1-5: C C D A B; 6-10: B B B D B; 11-15: D A C A A; 16-20: B D B A D; 21-28: B C B A B C B C

第二十三章　情态动词

单选：选择最合适的答案。

1-5: A C D A B; 6-10: D B A A A; 11-15: A C A C A; 16-20: C D D B B; 21-25: D B A D A; 26-30: D B C B A

主要参考书目

1. Betty Schrampfer Azar (2002) *Understanding and Using English Grammar*, New York: Longman
2. John Eastwood (1994) *Oxford Guide to English Grammar*, New York: Oxford University Press
3. John Eastwood (2005) *Oxford Learner's Grammar Finder*, New York: Oxford University Press
4. L. G. Alexander (1990) *Longman English Grammar Practice for Intermediate Students*, New York: Longman
5. Martin Hewings (1999) *Advanced Grammar in Use*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press
6. Michael Swan (2005) *Practical English Usage*, New York: Oxford University Press
7. Peter Herring (2016) *Complete English Grammar Rules*, South Carolina: CreateSpace
8. Randolph Quirk, Sidney Greenbaum, Geoffrey Leech and Jan Svartvik (1985) *A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language*, New York: Longman
9. Raymond Murphy (2004) *English Grammar in Use,* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press
10. Rodney Huddleston and Geoffrey K. Pullum (2002) *The Cambridge Grammar of the English Language*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press